

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---



# Police Act 1997

## 1997 CHAPTER 50

An Act to make provision for the National Criminal Intelligence Service and the National Crime Squad; to make provision about entry on and interference with property and with wireless telegraphy in the course of the prevention or detection of serious crime; to make provision for the Police Information Technology Organisation; to provide for the issue of certificates about criminal records; to make provision about the administration and organisation of the police; to repeal certain enactments about rehabilitation of offenders; and for connected purposes. [21st March 1997]

Be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Act: power to modify conferred (E.W.S.) (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 39, s. 7(2); S.I. 2001/766, art. 2(1)(a) (subject to the transitional provisions and savings in art. 3)  
Act amended (13.8.2001, to the extent as mentioned in art. 2 of the Commencement Order, otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 23, ss. 72(4)(d), 83(2) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2001/2727, art. 2

### Commencement Information

- I1** Act partly in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**PART I**

THE NATIONAL CRIMINAL INTELLIGENCE SERVICE

*The Service Authority*

**F11 The Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Functions*

**F12 General functions of the NCIS Service Authority and NCIS.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F13 Objectives.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F14 Service plans.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F15 Annual reports.**

.....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Director General and other members*

**F16 Appointment of Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F17 Removal of Director General by the Authority.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F18 Deputy Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F19 Members of NCIS.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F19A Removal of certain members appointed under section 9**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Functions of Director General*

**F1 10 General function of Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 11 Reports by Director General to the Authority.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 12 Responsibility for co-ordination of police and Security Service activities.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Service Authority’s officers and employees*

**F1 13 Officers and employees.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1 14 Appointment of clerk.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 15 Appointment of persons not employed by the NCIS Service Authority.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Financial provisions*

**F1 16 NCIS service fund.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 16A Budget statement**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 17 Grants from the Secretary of State**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1 17A Provision supplemental to section 17**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 18** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 18A Financing by the Scottish Ministers**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 19 Charges.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 20 Acceptance of gifts and loans.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 21 Pensions and gratuities.**

.....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 21A Accounts**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*General provisions*

**F1 22 Collaboration agreements.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 23 Aid by and for NCIS.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 24 Provision of special services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Central supervision and direction*

**F125 General duty of the Secretary of State and the Scottish Ministers**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F126 Setting of objectives.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F127 Setting of performance targets.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F128 Codes of practice.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F128A Codes of practice for Director General of NCIS**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F129 Removal of Director General etc.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F130 Power to give directions to NCIS Service Authority**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F131 Reports from NCIS Service Authority.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F131A Power to give directions as to action plans**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F131B Procedure for giving directions by the Secretary of State**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F131C Procedure for giving directions by the Scottish Ministers**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F132 Reports from Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F133 Criminal statistics.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F134 Inquiries.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F134A Regulations for NCIS**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F135 Regulations as to standard of equipment.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>36 Common services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Discipline and complaints*

**<sup>F1</sup>37 Discipline regulations.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>38 Appeals.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>39 Complaints.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>40 Information as to the manner of dealing with complaints etc.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Miscellaneous*

**F1 41 Arrangements for consultation.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 42 Liability for wrongful acts of constables etc.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 43 Causing disaffection.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 44 Orders governing NCIS Service Authority.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### General

#### <sup>F1</sup>45 Orders and regulations.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

#### <sup>F1</sup>46 Interpretation of Part I.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

## PART II

### THE NATIONAL CRIME SQUAD

##### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C2** [Pt. II](#) (ss. 47-90): Power to continue conferred (11.5.2001) by [2001 c. 16](#), [ss. 109\(2\)\(c\)\(i\)](#), 138

### *The Service Authority*

#### <sup>F1</sup>47 The Service Authority for the National Crime Squad.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

### *Functions*

#### <sup>F1</sup>48 General functions of the NCS Service Authority and the National Crime Squad.

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 49 Objectives.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 50 Service plans.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 51 Annual reports.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Director General and other members*

**F1 52 Appointment of Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 53 Removal of Director General by the Authority.**

.....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>54 Deputy Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>55 Members of the National Crime Squad.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>55A Removal of certain members appointed under section 55**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Functions of Director General*

**<sup>F1</sup>56 General function of Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>57 Reports by Director General to the Authority.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Service Authority’s officers and employees*

**<sup>F1</sup>58 Officers and employees.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>59 Appointment of clerk.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>60 Appointment of persons not employed by the NCS Service Authority.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Financial provisions*

**<sup>F1</sup>61 NCS service fund.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1 61A Budget statement**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 62 Grants from the Secretary of State**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 62A Provision supplemental to section 62**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 63 Initial financing of NCS Service Authority.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 64 Charges.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 65 Acceptance of gifts and loans.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 66 Pensions and gratuities.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 66A Accounts**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 67 Revenue accounts and capital finance.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F1 68 Financial administration.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1 Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Special services*

**F1 69 Provision of special services.**

.....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Central supervision and direction*

**F170** **General duty of Secretary of State.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F171** **Setting of objectives.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F172** **Setting of performance targets.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F173** **Codes of practice.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F173A** **Codes of practice for Director General of NCS**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F174 Removal of Director General etc.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F175 Power to give directions to NCS Service Authority**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F176 Reports from NCS Service Authority.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F176A Power to give directions as to action plans**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**F176B Procedure for giving directions under sections 75 and 76A**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>77 Reports from Director General.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>78 Criminal statistics.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>79 Inquiries.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>79A Regulations for NCS**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>80 Regulations as to standard of equipment.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>80A Regulation of procedures and practices**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Discipline and complaints*

**<sup>F1</sup>81 Discipline regulations.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>82 Appeals.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>83 Complaints.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>84 Information as to the manner of dealing with complaints etc.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

- F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

*Miscellaneous*

**<sup>F1</sup>85 Arrangements for consultation.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>86 Liability for wrongful acts of constables etc.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**<sup>F1</sup>87 Causing disaffection.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F1** Ss. 1-87 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 95, [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(2)(7))

**88 Application to NCS Service Authority of local authority enactments.**

Schedule 6 (which amends local authority enactments applying to police authorities so as to apply those enactments in a similar way to the NCS Service Authority) shall have effect.

**Commencement Information**

- I2** [S. 88](#) partly in force; [s. 88](#) not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 135](#); [s. 88](#) in force for certain purposes at: 23.7.1997 by [S.I. 1997/1377](#), [art. 4](#); 31.10.1997 by [S.I. 1997/2390](#), [art. 2](#) (with [arts. 3-7](#) (of which [arts. 4-7](#) were revoked (1.4.1998) by [S.I. 1998/354](#), [art. 7](#))); 1.4.1998 by [S.I. 1998/354](#), [art. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *General*

#### **F<sup>2</sup>89 Orders and regulations.**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

- F2** S. 89 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 96, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

#### **F<sup>3</sup>90 Interpretation of Part II.**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

- F3** S. 90 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 96, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

## **PART III**

### AUTHORISATION OF ACTION IN RESPECT OF PROPERTY

##### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C3** Pt. 3 (ss. 91-108) amended (S.) (29.9.2000) by [2000 asp 11](#), s. **24(2)(b)** (with s. 30); S.S.I. 2000/341, **art. 2**
- C4** Pt. 3: power to apply (with modifications) conferred (1.10.2002) by [Police Reform Act 2002 \(c. 30\)](#), s. **19(2)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2306, **art. 2(b)(v)**
- C5** Pt. III modified (1.4.2004) by [The Independent Police Complaints Commission \(Investigatory Powers\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/815\)](#), arts. 1(1), **2**

### *The Commissioners*

#### **91 The Commissioners.**

- (1) The Prime Minister [<sup>F4</sup>after consultation with the Scottish Ministers], shall appoint for the purposes of this Part—
  - (a) a Chief Commissioner, and
  - (b) such number of other Commissioners as the Prime Minister thinks fit.
- (2) The persons appointed under subsection (1) shall be persons who hold or have held high judicial office within the meaning of the <sup>M1</sup>Appellate Jurisdiction Act 1876.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) to (7), each Commissioner shall hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms of his appointment.
- (4) Each Commissioner shall be appointed for a term of three years.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) A person who ceases to be a Commissioner (otherwise than under subsection (7)) may be reappointed under this section.
- [<sup>F5</sup>(6) Subject to subsection (7), a Commissioner shall not be removed from office before the end of the term for which he is appointed unless—
- (a) a resolution approving his removal has been passed by each House of Parliament; and
  - (b) a resolution approving his removal has been passed by the Scottish Parliament.]
- (7) A Commissioner may be removed from office by the Prime Minister if after his appointment—
- (a) a bankruptcy order is made against him or his estate is sequestrated or he makes a composition or arrangement with, or grants a trust deed for, his creditors;
  - (b) a disqualification order under the <sup>M2</sup>Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 or Part II of the <sup>M3</sup>Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, or an order under section 429(2)(b) of the <sup>M4</sup>Insolvency Act 1986 (failure to pay under county court administration order), is made against him [<sup>F6</sup>or his disqualification undertaking is accepted under section 7 or 8 of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986][<sup>F7</sup>or under the Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002]; or
  - (c) he is convicted in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man of an offence and has passed on him a sentence of imprisonment (whether suspended or not).
- (8) The Secretary of State shall pay to each Commissioner [<sup>F8</sup>, other than a commissioner carrying out functions as mentioned in subsection (8A),] such allowances as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- [<sup>F9</sup>(8A) The Scottish Ministers shall pay to any Commissioner who carries out his functions under this Part wholly or mainly in Scotland such allowances as the Scottish Ministers consider appropriate.]
- (9) The Secretary of State shall, after consultation with the Chief Commissioner [<sup>F10</sup>and subject to the approval of the Treasury as to numbers], provide the Commissioners [<sup>F11</sup>and any Assistant Surveillance Commissioners holding office under section 63 of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000][<sup>F12</sup>, other than any Commissioner carrying out functions as mentioned in subsection (9A),] with such staff as the Secretary of State considers necessary for the discharge of their functions.
- [<sup>F13</sup>(9A) The Scottish Ministers shall, after consultation with the Chief Commissioner, provide any Commissioner who carries out his functions under this Part wholly or mainly in Scotland with such staff as the Scottish Ministers consider necessary for the discharge of his functions.]
- (10) The decisions of the Chief Commissioner or, subject to sections 104 and 106, any other Commissioner (including decisions as to his jurisdiction) shall not be subject to appeal or liable to be questioned in any court.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F4** Words in s. 91(1) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(2)(a)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F5** S. 91(6) substituted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(2)(b)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F6** Words in s. 91(7)(b) inserted (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 39, s. 8, **Sch. 4 Pt. II para. 22(2)**; S.I. 2001/766, **art. 2(1)(a)** (subject to the transitional provisions and savings in art. 3)
- F7** Words in s. 91(7)(b) inserted (E.W.S.) (with application in accordance with art. 1(2) of the amending S.I.) by The Insolvency Act 2000 (Company Directors Disqualification Undertakings) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/1941), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 10**
- F8** Words in s. 91(8) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(2)(c)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F9** S. 91(8A) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(2)(d)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F10** Words in s. 91(9) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82, **Sch. 4 para. 8(1)(a)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F11** Words in s. 91(9) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82, **Sch. 4 para. 8(1)(b)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F12** Words in s. 91(9) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(2)(f)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F13** S. 91(9A) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(2)(g)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**.

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C6** S. 91(3)-(8) applied (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 63(5) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

### Commencement Information

- I3** S. 91 wholly in force at 22.2.1999; s. 91 not in force at Royal Assent see s.135; s. 91 (1)-(9) in force at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, **art. 2**(with art. 2(3)); S. 91(10) in force at 22.2.1999 by S.I. 1999/151, **art. 2**

### Marginal Citations

- M1** 1876 c. 59.  
**M2** 1986 c. 46.  
**M3** S.I. 1989/2404 (N.I.18).  
**M4** 1986 c. 45.

## Authorisations

### 92 Effect of authorisation under Part III.

No entry on or interference with property or with wireless telegraphy shall be unlawful if it is authorised by an authorisation having effect under this Part.

### 93 Authorisations to interfere with property etc.

- (1) Where subsection (2) applies, an authorising officer may authorise—
- (a) the taking of such action, in respect of such property in the relevant area, as he may specify,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F14</sup>(ab) the taking of such action falling within subsection (1A), in respect of property outside the relevant area, as he may specify, or]
- (b) the taking of such action in the relevant area as he may specify, in respect of wireless telegraphy.
- [<sup>F15</sup>(1A) The action falling within this subsection is action for maintaining or retrieving any equipment, apparatus or device the placing or use of which in the relevant area has been authorised under this Part or Part II of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 or under any enactment contained in or made under an Act of the Scottish Parliament which makes provision equivalent to that made by Part II of that Act of 2000.
- (1B) Subsection (1) applies where the authorising officer is a [<sup>F16</sup>member of the staff of the Serious Organised Crime Agency,] customs officer [<sup>F17</sup>or an officer of the Office of Fair Trading] with the omission of—
- (a) the words “in the relevant area”, in each place where they occur; and
- (b) paragraph (ab).]
- (2) This subsection applies where the authorising officer believes—
- (a) that it is necessary for the action specified to be taken [<sup>F18</sup>for the purpose of preventing or detecting] serious crime, and
- [<sup>F19</sup>(b) that the taking of the action is proportionate to what the action seeks to achieve.]
- [<sup>F20</sup>(2A) Subsection (2) applies where the authorising officer is the Chief Constable or the Deputy Chief Constable of the [<sup>F21</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland] as if the reference in subsection (2)(a) to preventing or detecting serious crime included a reference to the interests of national security.
- [ Where the authorising officer is the chairman of the Office of Fair Trading, the only
- <sup>F22</sup>(2AA) purpose falling within subsection (2)(a) is the purpose of preventing or detecting an offence under section 188 of the Enterprise Act 2002.]
- (2B) The matters to be taken into account in considering whether the requirements of subsection (2) are satisfied in the case of any authorisation shall include whether what it is thought necessary to achieve by the authorised action could reasonably be achieved by other means.]
- (3) An authorising officer shall not give an authorisation under this section except on an application made—
- (a) if the authorising officer is within subsection (5)(a) to [<sup>F23</sup>(ea) or (ee)], by a member of his police force,
- [<sup>F24</sup>(aa) if the authorising officer is within subsection (5)(eb) to (ed), by a member, as the case may be, of the Royal Navy Regulating Branch, the Royal Military Police or the Royal Air Force Police;]
- [<sup>F25</sup>(b) if the authorising officer is within subsection (5)(f), by a member of the staff of the Serious Organised Crime Agency,]
- (d) if the authorising officer is within subsection (5)(h), by a customs officer [<sup>F26</sup>, or
- (e) if the authorising officer is within subsection (5)(i), by an officer of the Office of Fair Trading.]
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (2), conduct which constitutes one or more offences shall be regarded as serious crime if, and only if,—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) it involves the use of violence, results in substantial financial gain or is conduct by a large number of persons in pursuit of a common purpose, or
- (b) the offence or one of the offences is an offence for which a person who has attained the age of twenty-one and has no previous convictions could reasonably be expected to be sentenced to imprisonment for a term of three years or more,

and, where the authorising officer is within subsection (5)(h), it relates to an assigned matter within the meaning of section 1(1) of the <sup>M5</sup>Customs and Excise Management Act 1979.

(5) In this section “authorising officer” means—

- (a) the chief constable of a police force maintained under section 2 of the <sup>M6</sup>Police Act 1996 (maintenance of police forces for areas in England and Wales except London);
- (b) the Commissioner, or an Assistant Commissioner, of Police of the Metropolis;
- (c) the Commissioner of Police for the City of London;
- (d) the chief constable of a police force maintained under or by virtue of section 1 of the <sup>M7</sup>Police (Scotland) Act 1967 (maintenance of police forces for areas in Scotland);
- (e) the Chief Constable or a Deputy Chief Constable of the [<sup>F21</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland];
- [<sup>F27</sup>(ea) the Chief Constable of the Ministry of Defence Police;
- (eb) the Provost Marshal of the Royal Navy Regulating Branch;
- (ec) the Provost Marshal of the Royal Military Police;
- (ed) the Provost Marshal of the Royal Air Force Police;
- (ee) the Chief Constable of the <sup>F28</sup>British Transport Police;]
- [<sup>F29</sup>(f) the Director General of the Serious Organised Crime Agency, or any member of the staff of that Agency who is designated for the purposes of this paragraph by that Director General;]
- (h) [<sup>F30</sup>any] customs officer designated by the Commissioners of Customs and Excise for the purposes of this paragraph [<sup>F31</sup>; or
- (i) the chairman of the Office of Fair Trading.]

(6) In this section “relevant area”—

- (a) in relation to a person within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of subsection (5), means the area in England and Wales for which his police force is maintained;
- (b) in relation to a person within paragraph (d) of that subsection means the area in Scotland for which his police force is maintained;
- (c) in relation to a person within paragraph (e) of that subsection, means Northern Ireland;
- [<sup>F32</sup>(ca) in relation to a person within paragraph (ea), means any place where, under section 2 of the <sup>M8</sup>Ministry of Defence Police Act 1987, the members of the Ministry of Defence Police have the powers and privileges of a constable;
- (cb) in relation to a person within paragraph (ee), means the United Kingdom;]
- [<sup>F33</sup>(d) .....
- [<sup>F34</sup>(e) .....
- [<sup>F35</sup>(f) .....

and in each case includes the adjacent United Kingdom waters.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F36</sup>(6A) For the purposes of any authorisation by a person within paragraph (eb), (ec) or (ed) of subsection (5) property is in the relevant area or action in respect of wireless telegraphy is taken in the relevant area if, as the case may be—
- (a) the property is owned, occupied, in the possession of or being used by a person subject to service discipline; or
  - (b) the action is taken in relation to the use of wireless telegraphy by such a person.
- (6B) For the purposes of this section a person is subject to service discipline—
- (a) in relation to the Royal Navy Regulating Branch, if he is subject to the <sup>M9</sup>Naval Discipline Act 1957 or is a civilian to whom Parts I and II of that Act for the time being apply by virtue of section 118 of that Act ;
  - (b) in relation to the Royal Military Police, if he is subject to military law or is a civilian to whom Part II of the <sup>M10</sup>Army Act 1955 for the time being applies by virtue of section 209 of that Act; and
  - (c) in relation to the Royal Air Force Police, if he is subject to air-force law or is a civilian to whom Part II of the <sup>M11</sup>Air Force Act 1955 for the time being applies by virtue of section 209 of that Act.]
- (7) The powers conferred by, or by virtue of, this section are additional to any other powers which a person has as a constable either at common law or under or by virtue of any other enactment and are not to be taken to affect any of those other powers.

#### Textual Amendments

- F14** S. 93(1)(ab) substituted for word “or” (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(2) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F15** S. 93(1A)(1B) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(3) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F16** Words in s. 93(1B) inserted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 97(2); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10 (with art. 4(3))
- F17** Words in s. 93(1B) inserted (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 200(2)(a), 279; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch.
- F18** Words in s. 93(2)(a) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(4)(a) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F19** S. 93(2)(b) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(4)(b) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F20** S. 93(2A)(2B) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(5) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F21** Words in s. 93(2A)(5)(e) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), Sch. 6 para. 20(2)(b); S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, Sch.
- F22** S. 93(2AA) inserted (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 200(2)(b), 279; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch.
- F23** Words in s. 93(3)(a) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), Sch. 4 para. 8(2)(a) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F24** S. 93(3)(aa) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82, Sch. 4 para. 8(2)(b) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F25** S. 93(3)(b) substituted for s. 93(3)(b)(c) (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 97(3); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10 (with art. 4(3))
- F26** S. 93(3)(e) and word inserted (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 200(2)(c), 279; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch.
- F27** S. 93(5)(ea)-(ee) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(6)(a) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F28** S. 93 amended (1.7.2004) by Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (c. 20), Sch. 5 para. 4; S.I. 2004/1572, art. 3(jjj)
- F29** S. 93(5)(f) substituted for s. 93(5)(f)(g) (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 97(4); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10 (with art. 4(3))

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F30** Word in s. 93(5)(h) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(6)(c) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F31** S. 93(5)(i) and word inserted (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), ss. 200(2)(d), 279; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch.
- F32** S. 93(6)(ca)(cb) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(7) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F33** S. 93(6)(d) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 97(5), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(3))
- F34** S. 93(6)(e) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 97(5), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd) (with art. 4(3))
- F35** S. 93(6)(f) and the word “and” immediately preceding it repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2
- F36** S. 93(6A)(6B) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 75(8) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C7** S. 93 amended (S.) (29.9.2000) by 2000 asp 11, s. 23(5) (with s. 30); S.S.I. 2000/341, art. 2

#### Marginal Citations

- M5** 1979 c. 2.  
**M6** 1996 c. 16.  
**M7** 1967 c. 77.  
**M8** 1987 c. 4.  
**M9** 1957 c. 53.  
**M10** 1955 c. 18.  
**M11** 1955 c. 19.

## 94 Authorisations given in absence of authorising officer.

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where it is not reasonably practicable for an authorising officer to consider an application for an authorisation under section 93 and—
- (a) if the authorising officer is within paragraph (b) [<sup>F37</sup>, (e) or (f)] of section 93(5), it is also not reasonably practicable for the application to be considered by any of the other persons within the paragraph concerned; <sup>F38</sup> . . . [<sup>F39</sup> or]
  - (b) if the authorising officer is within paragraph (a), (c) [<sup>F40</sup> or (d)] of section 93(5), it is also not reasonably practicable for the application to be considered by his designated deputy <sup>F41</sup> ...
  - <sup>F41</sup>(c) .....
- (2) Where this subsection applies, the powers conferred on the authorising officer by section 93 may, in an urgent case, be exercised—
- (a) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (a) or (d) of subsection (5) of that section, by a person holding the rank of assistant chief constable in his force;
  - (b) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (b) of that subsection, by a person holding the rank of commander in the metropolitan police force;
  - (c) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (c) of that subsection, by a person holding the rank of commander in the City of London police force;
  - (d) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (e) of that subsection, by a person holding the rank of assistant chief constable in the [<sup>F42</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland];

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F43</sup>(da) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (ea) of that subsection, by a person holding the rank of deputy or assistant chief constable in the Ministry of Defence Police;
- (db) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (eb) of that subsection, by a person holding the position of assistant Provost Marshal in the Royal Navy Regulating Branch;
- (dc) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (ec) or (ed) of that subsection, by a person holding the position of deputy Provost Marshal in the Royal Military Police or, as the case may be, in the Royal Air Force Police;
- (dd) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (ee) of that subsection, by a person holding the rank of deputy or assistant chief constable in the <sup>F44</sup>British Transport Police;]
- [<sup>F45</sup>(e) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (f) of that subsection, by a person designated for the purposes of this section by the Director General of the Serious Organised Crime Agency;]
- (f) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (h) of that subsection, by a customs officer designated by the Commissioners of Customs and Excise for the purposes of this section.
- [<sup>F46</sup>(g) where the authorising officer is within paragraph (i) of that subsection, by an officer of the Office of Fair Trading designated by it for the purposes of this section.]

<sup>F47</sup>(3) . . . . .

(4) In subsection (1), “designated deputy”—

- (a) in the case of an authorising officer within paragraph (a) or (d) of section 93(5), means the person holding the rank of assistant chief constable designated to act <sup>F48</sup> . . . under section 12(4) of the <sup>M12</sup>Police Act 1996 or, as the case may be, section 5(4) of the <sup>M13</sup>Police (Scotland) Act 1967;
- (b) in the case of an authorising officer within paragraph (c) of section 93(5), means the person authorised to act <sup>F48</sup> . . . under section 25 of the <sup>M14</sup>City of London Police Act 1839; <sup>F49</sup> . . .

- <sup>F50</sup>(c) . . . . .
- (d) . . . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F37** Words in s. 94(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 4 para. 98\(2\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), [Sch. para. 10](#)
- F38** Word at the end of s. 94(1)(a) repealed (25.9.2000) by [2000 c. 23](#), s. 82(2), [Sch. 5](#) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, [art. 2](#)
- F39** Word in s. 94(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 4 para. 98\(2\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), [Sch. para. 10](#)
- F40** Words in s. 94(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 4 para. 98\(2\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), [Sch. para. 10](#)
- F41** S. 94(1)(c) and word repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 4 para. 98\(2\)\(d\)](#), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), [Sch. paras. 10, 13\(dd\)](#)
- F42** Words in s. 94(2)(d) substituted (4.11.2001) by [2000 c. 32](#), s. 78(1), [Sch. 6 para. 20\(2\)\(b\)](#); S.R. 2001/396, [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#)
- F43** S. 94(2)(da)-(dd) inserted (25.9.2000) by [2000 c. 23](#), s. 82(1), [Sch. 4 para. 8\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, [art. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F44** S. 94 amended (1.7.2004) by Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (c. 20), **Sch. 5 para. 4**; S.I. 2004/1572, art. 3(jjj)
- F45** S. 94(2)(e) substituted for s. 94(2)(e)(ea) (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 98(3)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10
- F46** S. 94(2)(g) inserted (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), **ss. 200(3)**, 279; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch.
- F47** S. 94(3) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 98(4), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)
- F48** Words in s. 94(4) repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F49** Word in s. 94(4) repealed (30.9.1998) by 1998 c. 37, s. 113(3), s. 120(2), **Sch. 10**; S.I. 1998/2327, **art. 2**
- F50** S. 94(4)(c) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 98(4), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C8** S. 94 applied (*prosp.*) by 2000 c. 23, ss. 49, 83(2), **Sch. 2 para. 2(7)** (with s. 82(3))

#### Marginal Citations

- M12** 1996 c. 16.  
**M13** 1967 c. 77.  
**M14** 1839 c. xciv.

## 95 Authorisations: form and duration etc.

- (1) An authorisation shall be in writing, except that in an urgent case an authorisation (other than one given by virtue of section 94) may be given orally.
- (2) An authorisation shall, unless renewed under subsection (3), cease to have effect—
  - (a) if given orally or by virtue of section 94, at the end of the period of 72 hours beginning with the time when it took effect;
  - (b) in any other case, at the end of the period of three months beginning with the day on which it took effect.
- (3) If at any time before an authorisation would cease to have effect the authorising officer who gave the authorisation, or in whose absence it was given, considers it necessary for the authorisation to continue to have effect for the purpose for which it was issued, he may, in writing, renew it for a period of three months beginning with the day on which it would cease to have effect.
- (4) A person shall cancel an authorisation given by him if satisfied that <sup>[F51]</sup>the authorisation is one in relation to which the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 93(2) are no longer satisfied.]
- (5) An authorising officer shall cancel an authorisation given in his absence if satisfied that <sup>[F51]</sup>the authorisation is one in relation to which the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 93(2) are no longer satisfied].
- (6) If the authorising officer who gave the authorisation is within paragraph (b) <sup>[F52]</sup>, (e) <sup>[F53]</sup> or (f)] of section 93(5), the power conferred on that person by subsections (3) and (4) above shall also be exercisable by each of the other persons within the paragraph concerned.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) Nothing in this section shall prevent a designated deputy from exercising the powers conferred on an authorising officer within paragraph (a), (c) [<sup>F54</sup>or (d)] of section 93(5) by subsections (3), (4) and (5) above.

#### Textual Amendments

- F51** Words in s. 95(4)(5) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(6)(a)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F52** Words in s. 95(6) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(6)(b)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F53** Words in s. 95(6) substituted (1.4.2006) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 99(2)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10
- F54** Words in s. 95(7) substituted (1.4.2006) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 99(3)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10

## 96 Notification of authorisations etc.

- (1) Where a person gives, renews or cancels an authorisation, he shall, as soon as is reasonably practicable and in accordance with arrangements made by the Chief Commissioner, give notice in writing that he has done so to a Commissioner appointed under section 91(1)(b).
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), a notice under this section shall specify such matters as the Secretary of State may by order prescribe.
- (3) A notice under this section of the giving or renewal of an authorisation shall specify—
- whether section 97 applies to the authorisation or renewal, and
  - where that section does not apply by virtue of subsection (3) of that section, the grounds on which the case is believed to be one of urgency.
- (4) Where a notice is given to a Commissioner under this section, he shall, as soon as is reasonably practicable, scrutinise the notice.
- (5) An order under subsection (2) shall be made by statutory instrument.
- (6) A statutory instrument which contains an order under subsection (2) shall not be made unless a draft has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.

#### Commencement Information

- I4** S. 96 wholly in force at 22.2.1999; s. 96 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; s. 96 in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, **art. 2**(with art. 2(3)); s. 96 in force at 22.2.1999 insofar as not already in force by S.I. 1999/151, **art. 2**

### *Authorisations requiring approval*

## 97 Authorisations requiring approval.

- (1) An authorisation to which this section applies shall not take effect until—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) it has been approved in accordance with this section by a Commissioner appointed under section 91(1)(b), and
  - (b) the person who gave the authorisation has been notified under subsection (4).
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), this section applies to an authorisation if, at the time it is given, the person who gives it believes—
- (a) that any of the property specified in the authorisation—
    - (i) is used wholly or mainly as a dwelling or as a bedroom in a hotel, or
    - (ii) constitutes office premises, or
  - (b) that the action authorised by it is likely to result in any person acquiring knowledge of—
    - (i) matters subject to legal privilege,
    - (ii) confidential personal information, or
    - (iii) confidential journalistic material.
- (3) This section does not apply to an authorisation where the person who gives it believes that the case is one of urgency.
- (4) Where a Commissioner receives a notice under section 96 which specifies that this section applies to the authorisation, he shall as soon as is reasonably practicable—
- (a) decide whether to approve the authorisation or refuse approval, and
  - (b) give written notice of his decision to the person who gave the authorisation.
- (5) A Commissioner shall approve an authorisation if, and only if, he is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for believing the matters specified in section 93(2).
- (6) Where a Commissioner refuses to approve an authorisation, he shall, as soon as is reasonably practicable, make a report of his findings to the authorising officer who gave it or in whose absence it was given<sup>F55</sup> . . .
- [<sup>F56</sup>(6A) The reference in subsection (6) to the authorising officer who gave the authorisation or in whose absence it was given shall be construed, in the case of an authorisation given by or in the absence of a person within paragraph (b) [<sup>F57</sup>or (e)] of section 93(5), as a reference to the Commissioner of Police [<sup>F58</sup>or, as the case may be, Chief Constable] mentioned in the paragraph concerned.]
- [<sup>F59</sup>(6B) The reference in subsection (6) to the authorising officer who gave the authorisation or in whose absence it was given shall be construed—
- (a) in the case of an authorisation given by a person within paragraph (f) of section 93(5), as a reference to that person, and
  - (b) in the case of an authorisation given in the absence of such a person, as a reference to a member of the staff of the Serious Organised Crime Agency who is designated for the purposes of this section by the Director General of that Agency.]
- (7) This section shall apply in relation to a renewal of an authorisation as it applies in relation to an authorisation (the references in subsection (2)(a) and (b) to the authorisation being construed as references to the authorisation renewed).
- (8) In this section—
- “office premises” has the meaning given in section 1(2) of the<sup>M15</sup>Offices, Shops and Railway Premises Act 1963;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“hotel” means premises used for the reception of guests who desire to sleep in the premises.

#### Textual Amendments

- F55** Words in s. 97(6) repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1)(2), Sch. 4 para. 8(7), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F56** S. 97(6A) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 82(3)**; S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F57** Words in s. 97(6A) substituted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 100(2)(a)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10
- F58** Words in s. 97(6A) substituted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 100(2)(b)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10
- F59** S. 97(6B) inserted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 100(3)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10

#### Marginal Citations

- M15** 1963 c. 41.

## 98 Matters subject to legal privilege.

- (1) Subject to subsection (5) below, in section 97 “matters subject to legal privilege” means matters to which subsection (2), (3) or (4) below applies.
- (2) This subsection applies to communications between a professional legal adviser and—
  - (a) his client, or
  - (b) any person representing his client,which are made in connection with the giving of legal advice to the client.
- (3) This subsection applies to communications—
  - (a) between a professional legal adviser and his client or any person representing his client, or
  - (b) between a professional legal adviser or his client or any such representative and any other person,which are made in connection with or in contemplation of legal proceedings and for the purposes of such proceedings.
- (4) This subsection applies to items enclosed with or referred to in communications of the kind mentioned in subsection (2) or (3) and made—
  - (a) in connection with the giving of legal advice, or
  - (b) in connection with or in contemplation of legal proceedings and for the purposes of such proceedings.
- (5) For the purposes of section 97—
  - (a) communications and items are not matters subject to legal privilege when they are in the possession of a person who is not entitled to possession of them, and
  - (b) communications and items held, or oral communications made, with the intention of furthering a criminal purpose are not matters subject to legal privilege.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **99 Confidential personal information.**

- (1) In section 97 “confidential personal information” means—
- (a) personal information which a person has acquired or created in the course of any trade, business, profession or other occupation or for the purposes of any paid or unpaid office, and which he holds in confidence, and
  - (b) communications as a result of which personal information—
    - (i) is acquired or created as mentioned in paragraph (a), and
    - (ii) is held in confidence.
- (2) For the purposes of this section “personal information” means information concerning an individual (whether living or dead) who can be identified from it and relating—
- (a) to his physical or mental health, or
  - (b) to spiritual counselling or assistance given or to be given to him.
- (3) A person holds information in confidence for the purposes of this section if he holds it subject—
- (a) to an express or implied undertaking to hold it in confidence, or
  - (b) to a restriction on disclosure or an obligation of secrecy contained in any enactment (including an enactment contained in an Act passed after this Act).

## **100 Confidential journalistic material.**

- (1) In section 97 “confidential journalistic material” means—
- (a) material acquired or created for the purposes of journalism which—
    - (i) is in the possession of persons who acquired or created it for those purposes,
    - (ii) is held subject to an undertaking, restriction or obligation of the kind mentioned in section 99(3), and
    - (iii) has been continuously held (by one or more persons) subject to such an undertaking, restriction or obligation since it was first acquired or created for the purposes of journalism, and
  - (b) communications as a result of which information is acquired for the purposes of journalism and held as mentioned in paragraph (a)(ii).
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a person who receives material, or acquires information, from someone who intends that the recipient shall use it for the purposes of journalism is to be taken to have acquired it for those purposes.

### *Code of Practice*

**F60**101 .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F60** S. 101 repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Complaints etc.

F61 102 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F61** S. 102 repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, ss. 70(2)(c), 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2** (and by art. 6(1) of that S.I. the repeal is expressed to be brought into force on 2.10.2000 subject to the provisions of art. 6(2)-(5))

### 103 Quashing of authorisations etc.

- (1) Where, at any time, a Commissioner appointed under section 91(1)(b) is satisfied that, at the time an authorisation was given or renewed, there were no reasonable grounds for believing the matters specified in section 93(2), he may quash the authorisation or, as the case may be, renewal.
- (2) Where, in the case of an authorisation or renewal to which section 97 does not apply, a Commissioner appointed under section 91(1)(b) is at any time satisfied that, at the time the authorisation was given or, as the case may be, renewed,—
  - (a) there were reasonable grounds for believing any of the matters specified in subsection (2) of section 97, and
  - (b) there were no reasonable grounds for believing the case to be one of urgency for the purposes of subsection (3) of that section,he may quash the authorisation or, as the case may be, renewal.
- (3) Where a Commissioner quashes an authorisation or renewal under subsection (1) or (2), he may order the destruction of any records relating to information obtained by virtue of the authorisation (or, in the case of a renewal, relating wholly or partly to information so obtained after the renewal) other than records required for pending criminal or civil proceedings.
- (4) If a Commissioner appointed under section 91(1)(b) is satisfied that, at any time after an authorisation was given or, in the case of an authorisation renewed under section 95, after it was renewed, there were no reasonable grounds for believing the matters specified in section 93(2), he may cancel the authorisation.
- (5) Where—
  - (a) an authorisation has ceased to have effect (otherwise than by virtue of subsection (1) or (2)), and
  - (b) a Commissioner appointed under section 91(1)(b) is satisfied that, at any time during the period of the authorisation, there were no reasonable grounds for believing the matters specified in section 93(2),he may order the destruction of any records relating, wholly or partly, to information which was obtained by virtue of the authorisation after that time (other than records required for pending criminal or civil proceedings).
- (6) Where a Commissioner exercises his powers under subsection (1), (2) or (4), he shall, if he is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for doing so, order that the authorisation shall be effective, for such period as he shall specify, so far as it

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

authorises the taking of action to retrieve anything left on property in accordance with the authorisation.

- (7) Where a Commissioner exercises a power conferred by this section, he shall, as soon as is reasonably practicable, make a report of his findings—
- (a) to the authorising officer who gave the authorisation or in whose absence it was given, and
  - (b) to the Chief Commissioner;
- [<sup>F62</sup>and subsection (6A) of section 97 shall apply for the purposes of this subsection as it applies for the purposes of subsection (6) of that section.]
- (8) Where—
- (a) a decision is made under subsection (1) or (2) and an order for the destruction of records is made under subsection (3), or
  - (b) a decision to order the destruction of records is made under subsection (5),
- the order shall not become operative until the period for appealing against the decision has expired and, where an appeal is made, a decision dismissing it has been made by the Chief Commissioner.
- (9) A Commissioner may exercise any of the powers conferred by this section notwithstanding any approval given under section 97.

#### Textual Amendments

**F62** Words in s. 103(7) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(8)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

### *Appeals*

#### **104 Appeals by authorising officers.**

- (1) An authorising officer who gives an authorisation, or in whose absence it is given, may, within the prescribed period, appeal to the Chief Commissioner against—
- (a) any refusal to approve the authorisation or any renewal of it under section 97;
  - (b) any decision to quash the authorisation, or any renewal of it, under subsection (1) of section 103;
  - (c) any decision to quash the authorisation, or any renewal of it, under subsection (2) of that section;
  - (d) any decision to cancel the authorisation under subsection (4) of that section;
  - (e) any decision to order the destruction of records under subsection (5) of that section;
  - (f) any refusal to make an order under subsection (6) of that section;
  - <sup>F63</sup>(g) .....
- (2) In subsection (1), “the prescribed period” means the period of seven days beginning with the day on which the refusal, decision or, as the case may be, determination appealed against is reported to the authorising officer.
- (3) In determining an appeal within subsection (1)(a), the Chief Commissioner shall, if he is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for believing the matters specified

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

in section 93(2), allow the appeal and direct the Commissioner to approve the authorisation or renewal under that section.

(4) In determining—

(a) an appeal within subsection (1)(b), <sup>F64</sup> . . .

(b) . . . . .

the Chief Commissioner shall allow the appeal unless he is satisfied that, at the time the authorisation was given or, as the case may be, renewed there were no reasonable grounds for believing the matters specified in section 93(2).

(5) In determining—

(a) an appeal within subsection (1)(c), <sup>F64</sup> . . .

(b) . . . . .

the Chief Commissioner shall allow the appeal unless he is satisfied as mentioned in section 103(2).

(6) In determining—

(a) an appeal within subsection (1)(d) or (e), <sup>F64</sup> . . .

(b) . . . . .

the Chief Commissioner shall allow the appeal unless he is satisfied that at the time to which the decision relates there were no reasonable grounds for believing the matters specified in section 93(2).

(7) In determining an appeal within subsection (1)(f), the Chief Commissioner shall allow the appeal and order that the authorisation shall be effective to the extent mentioned in section 103(6), for such period as he shall specify, if he is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for making such an order.

(8) Where an appeal is allowed under this section, the Chief Commissioner shall—

(a) in the case of an appeal within subsection (1)(b) or (c), also quash any order made by the Commissioner to destroy records relating to information obtained by virtue of the authorisation concerned, <sup>F65</sup> . . .

(b) . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

**F63** S. 104(1)(g) repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

**F64** S. 104(4)(b)(5)(b)(6)(b) and the word “or” immediately preceding them repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

**F65** S. 104(8)(b) and the word “and” immediately preceding it repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

**105 Appeals by authorising officers: supplementary.**

(1) Where the Chief Commissioner determines an appeal under section 104—

(a) he shall give notice of his determination—

(i) to the authorising officer concerned, [<sup>F66</sup>and]

(ii) to the Commissioner against whose refusal, decision or determination the appeal was made, <sup>F67</sup> . . .

(iii) . . . . .

(b) if he dismisses the appeal, he shall make a report of his findings—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) to the authorising officer concerned,
  - (ii) to the Commissioner against whose refusal, decision or determination the appeal was made, and
  - (iii) under section 107(2), to the Prime Minister [and the Scottish Ministers].
- (2) Subject to subsection (1)(b), the Chief Commissioner shall not give any reasons for a determination under section 104.
- (3) Nothing in section 104 shall prevent a designated deputy from exercising the powers conferred by subsection (1) of that section on an authorising officer within paragraph (a), (c) [<sup>F68</sup>or (d)] of section 93(5).

#### Textual Amendments

- F66** Word in s. 105(1)(a)(i) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(9)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F67** S. 105(1)(a)(iii) and the word “and” immediately preceding it repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1)(2), **Sch. 4 para. 8(9)**, **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F68** Words in s. 105(3) substituted (1.4.2006) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 101**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), **Sch. para. 10**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C9** Words in s. 105(1)(b)(iii) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(3)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**

<sup>F69</sup>**106** .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F69** S. 106 repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

### *General*

#### **107 Supplementary provisions relating to Commissioners.**

- (1) The Chief Commissioner shall keep under review the performance of functions under this Part.
- (2) The Chief Commissioner shall make an annual report on [<sup>F70</sup>the matters with which he is concerned] to the Prime Minister [<sup>F71</sup>and to the Scottish Ministers] and may at any time report to him [<sup>F71</sup>or them (as the case may require)] on [<sup>F70</sup>anything relating to any of those matters].
- (3) The Prime Minister shall lay before each House of Parliament a copy of each annual report made by the Chief Commissioner under subsection (2) together with a statement as to whether any matter has been excluded from that copy in pursuance of subsection (4) below.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F72</sup>(3A) The Scottish Ministers shall lay before the Scottish Parliament a copy of each annual report made by the Chief Commissioner under subsection (2), together with a statement as to whether any matter has been excluded from that copy in pursuance of subsection (4) below.]
- (4) The Prime Minister may exclude a matter from the copy of a report as laid before each House of Parliament, if it appears to him, after consultation with the Chief Commissioner [<sup>F73</sup>and the Scottish Ministers], that the publication of that matter in the report would be prejudicial to [<sup>F74</sup>any of the purposes for which authorisations may be given or granted under this Part of this Act or Part II of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 or under any enactment contained in or made under an Act of the Scottish Parliament which makes provision equivalent to that made by Part II of that Act of 2000 or] to the discharge of—
- (a) the functions of any police authority,
  - (b) the functions of the [<sup>F75</sup>Serious Organised Crime Agency], or
  - (c) the duties of the Commissioners of Customs and Excise.
- (5) Any person having functions under this Part, and any person taking action in relation to which an authorisation was given, shall comply with any request of a Commissioner for documents or information required by him for the purpose of enabling him to discharge his functions.
- [<sup>F76</sup>(5A) It shall be the duty of—
- (a) every person by whom, or on whose application, there has been given or granted any authorisation the function of giving or granting which is subject to review by the Chief Commissioner,
  - (b) every person who has engaged in conduct with the authority of such an authorisation,
  - (c) every person who holds or has held any office, rank or position with the same public authority as a person falling within paragraph (a),
  - (d) every person who holds or has held any office, rank or position with any public authority for whose benefit (within the meaning of Part II of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000) activities which are or may be subject to any such review have been or may be carried out, and
  - (e) every person to whom a notice under section 49 of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 (notices imposing a disclosure requirement in respect of information protected by a key) has been given in relation to any information obtained by conduct to which such an authorisation relates,
- to disclose or provide to the Chief Commissioner all such documents and information as he may require for the purpose of enabling him to carry out his functions.
- (5B) It shall be the duty of every Commissioner to give the tribunal established under section 65 of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 all such assistance (including his opinion as to any issue falling to be determined by that tribunal) as that tribunal may require—
- (a) in connection with the investigation of any matter by that tribunal; or
  - (b) otherwise for the purposes of that tribunal’s consideration or determination of any matter.
- (5C) In this section “public authority” means any public authority within the meaning of section 6 of the <sup>M16</sup>Human Rights Act 1998 (acts of public authorities) other than a court or tribunal.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F77(6) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F70** Words in s. 107(2) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(10)(a)(i)(ii)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F71** Words in s. 107(2) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(5)(a)(i)(ii)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F72** S. 107(3A) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(5)(b)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F73** Words in s. 107(4) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 6 Pt. II para. 2(5)(c)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F74** Words in s. 107(4) substituted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(10)(b)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F75** Words in s. 107(4)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 102**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10
- F76** S. 107(5A)-(5C) inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(10)(c)(11)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**
- F77** S. 107(6) repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(2), **Sch. 5** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C10** S. 107(3)(4) applied (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 39(3) (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

#### Marginal Citations

- M16** 1998 c. 42.

## 108 Interpretation of Part III.

(1) In this Part—

[<sup>F78</sup>“Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis” includes the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis;]

“authorisation” means an authorisation under section 93;

“authorising officer” has the meaning given by section 93(5);

“criminal proceedings” includes—

- (a) proceedings in the United Kingdom or elsewhere before a court-martial constituted under the <sup>M17</sup>Army Act 1955, the <sup>M18</sup>Air Force Act 1955 or the <sup>M19</sup>Naval Discipline Act 1957 <sup>F79</sup> . . . ,
- (b) proceedings before the Courts-Martial Appeal Court, and
- (c) proceedings before a Standing Civilian Court;

“customs officer” means an officer commissioned by the Commissioners of Customs and Excise under section 6(3) of the <sup>M20</sup>Customs and Excise Management Act 1979;

“designated deputy” has the meaning given in section 94(4);

“United Kingdom waters” has the meaning given in section 30(5) of the <sup>M21</sup>Police Act 1996; and

“wireless telegraphy” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M22</sup>Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949 and, in relation to wireless telegraphy, “interfere” has the same meaning as in that Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(2) Where, under this Part, notice of any matter is required to be given in writing, the notice may be transmitted by electronic means.

(3) For the purposes of this Part, an authorisation (or renewal) given—

- (a) by the designated deputy of an authorising officer, or
- (b) by a person on whom an authorising officer's powers are conferred by section 94,

shall be treated as an authorisation (or renewal) given in the absence of the authorising officer concerned; and references to the authorising officer in whose absence an authorisation (or renewal) was given shall be construed accordingly.

#### Textual Amendments

**F78** In s. 108(1) definition of "Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis" inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(12)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

**F79** In s. 108(1) words in para. (a) of definition of "criminal proceedings" repealed (28.2.2002) by 2001 c. 19, s. 38, **Sch. 7 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2002/345, **art. 2** (subject to art. 3)

#### Marginal Citations

**M17** 1955 c. 18.

**M18** 1955 c. 19.

**M19** 1957 c. 53.

**M20** 1979 c. 2.

**M21** 1996 c. 16.

**M22** 1949 c. 54.

## PART IV

### POLICE INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY ORGANISATION

#### 109 Police Information Technology Organisation.

(1) There shall be a body corporate to be known as the Police Information Technology Organisation ("the Organisation").

(2) Schedule 8 (which makes provision about the Organisation) shall have effect.

(3) The Organisation may carry out activities (including the commissioning of research) relating to information technology equipment and systems for the use of—

- (a) police authorities and police forces,
- <sup>[F80]</sup>(aa) the Serious Organised Crime Agency,] and
- (b) such other bodies as the Secretary of State may determine by order made by statutory instrument.

<sup>[F81]</sup>(3A) The Secretary of State shall obtain the consent of the Scottish Ministers before making any order by virtue subsection (3)(b) which determines any body whose functions are carried out wholly or mainly in Scotland for the purposes mentioned in that subsection.]

(4) The Organisation may also procure or assist in procuring other equipment, systems and services for any body falling within subsection (3) <sup>[F82]</sup>(a), (aa) or (b)].

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Any statutory instrument made by virtue of subsection (3)(b) shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (6) In this Part “information technology” includes any computer or other technology by means of which information or other matter may be recorded or communicated without being reduced to documentary form.

#### Textual Amendments

- F80** S. 109(3)(aa) inserted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 103(2)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10
- F81** S. 109(3A) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(2)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F82** Words in s. 109(4) substituted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 4 para. 103(3)**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10

#### Commencement Information

- I5** S. 109 wholly in force at 1.4.1998; s. 109 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135; s. 109(1) in force at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, **art. 2** (with **art. 2(3)**); s. 109(2) in force for certain purposes at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, **art. 2** (with **art. 2(3)**); s. 109(3) in force at 1.9.1997 for certain purposes by S.I. 1997/1377, **art. 2**; s. 109 otherwise in force at 1.4.1998 by S.I. 1998/354, **art. 2**

### 110 Relationship between the Organisation and the Secretary of State.

- (1) In exercising its functions the Organisation shall comply with any general or specific directions given in writing by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Before giving directions under subsection (1), the Secretary of State shall consult the Organisation.
- [<sup>F83</sup>(2A) The Secretary of State shall obtain the consent of the Scottish Ministers before giving any direction under subsection (1) which relates wholly or mainly to the exercise of the Organisation’s activities in or as regards Scotland.]
- (3) The Organisation shall provide the Secretary of State [<sup>F84</sup> or the Scottish Ministers] with such information about its activities as he [<sup>F84</sup> or they] may request.

#### Textual Amendments

- F83** S. 110(2A) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(3)(a)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F84** Words in s. 110(3) substituted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(3)(b)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**

### 111 Interpretation of Part IV.

- (1) In this Part, except where the context otherwise requires, “police authority” means—
- (a) a police authority for an area in Great Britain or a joint police board (within the meaning of the <sup>M23</sup>Police (Scotland) Act 1967), [<sup>F85</sup> and]
  - (b) the [<sup>F86</sup> Northern Ireland Policing Board],
  - <sup>F87</sup>(c) .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

<sup>F88</sup>(d) .....

(2) In this Part, except where the context otherwise requires, “chief officer of police” means—

- (a) a chief officer of police of a police force in England and Wales,
- (b) a chief constable of a police force in Scotland, [<sup>F89</sup>and]
- (c) the Chief Constable of the [<sup>F90</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland],

<sup>F91</sup>(d) .....

<sup>F92</sup>(e) .....

(3) In this Part “police force” means—

- (a) a police force in Great Britain, [<sup>F93</sup>and]
- (b) the [<sup>F90</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland] and the [<sup>F90</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland Reserve],

<sup>F94</sup>(c) .....

<sup>F95</sup>(d) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F85** Word in s. 111(1)(a) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(2\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10

**F86** Words in s. 111(1)(b) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), [Sch. 6 para. 20\(3\)](#); S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, [Sch.](#)

**F87** S. 111(1)(c) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(2\)\(b\), Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

**F88** S. 111(1)(d) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(2\)\(b\), Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

**F89** Word in s. 111(2)(b) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10

**F90** Words in s. 111(2)(c)(3)(b) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), [Sch. 6 para. 20\(2\)\(a\)\(b\)](#); S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, [Sch.](#)

**F91** S. 111(2)(d) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(3\)\(b\), Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

**F92** S. 111(2)(e) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(3\)\(b\), Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

**F93** Word in s. 111(3)(a) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(4\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 10

**F94** S. 111(3)(c) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(4\)\(b\), Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

**F95** S. 111(3)(d) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\), Sch. 4 para. 104\(4\)\(b\), Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C11** S. 111 excluded (1.9.1997) by [S.I. 1997/1930, art. 2](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I6** S. 111 wholly in force at 1.4.1998; s. 111 not in force at Royal Assent; s. 111, (1)(a)(b),(2)(a)(b)(c) and (3)(a)(b) in force at 1.9.1997 by [S.I. 1997/1930, art. 2](#); s. 111 otherwise in force at 1.4.1998 by [S.I. 1998/354, art. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Marginal Citations

**M23** 1967 c. 77.

## PART V

### CERTIFICATES OF CRIMINAL RECORDS, &C.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C12** Pt. 5 (ss. 112-127) explained (prosp) by 1998 c. 29, s. 56(4)

**C13** Pt. 5 power to apply (with modifications) conferred (E.W.) (7.7.2005) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), ss. 163(4), 178(2)

### 112 Criminal conviction certificates.

- (1) The Secretary of State shall issue a criminal conviction certificate to any individual who—
  - (a) makes an application in the prescribed [<sup>F96</sup>manner and] form, and
  - (b) [<sup>F97</sup>pays in the prescribed manner any prescribed fee]
- (2) A criminal conviction certificate is a certificate which—
  - (a) gives the prescribed details of every conviction of the applicant which is recorded in central records, or
  - (b) states that there is no such conviction.
- (3) In this section—
 

“central records” means such records of convictions held for the use of police forces generally as may be prescribed;

“conviction” means a conviction within the meaning of the <sup>M24</sup>Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974, other than a spent conviction.
- (4) Where an applicant has received a criminal conviction certificate, the Secretary of State may refuse to issue another certificate to that applicant during such period as may be prescribed.

#### Textual Amendments

**F96** Words in s. 112(1)(a) inserted (E.W.) (29.1.2004) by Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44), s. 336(3)(4), Sch. 35 para. 2; S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i); and inserted (S.) (7.2.2006) by The Police Act 1997 Amendment (Scotland) Order 2006 (S.S.I. 2006/50), arts. 1(1), 2(1)(a)

**F97** S. 112(1)(b) substituted (S.) (7.2.2006) by The Police Act 1997 Amendment (Scotland) Order 2006 (S.S.I. 2006/50), arts. 1(1), 2(1)(b)

#### Commencement Information

**I7** S. 112 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135(1)

### Marginal Citations

**M24** 1974 c. 53.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### 113 Criminal record certificates.

- [<sup>F98</sup>(1) The Secretary of State shall issue a criminal record certificate to any individual who—
- (a) makes an application under this section in the prescribed [<sup>F99</sup>manner and] form countersigned by a registered person, and
  - (b) pays [<sup>F100</sup>in the prescribed manner] any fee that is payable in relation to the application under regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) An application under this section must be accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purposes of an exempted question.
- (3) A criminal record certificate is a certificate which—
- (a) gives the prescribed details of every relevant matter relating to the applicant which is recorded in central records, or
  - (b) states that there is no such matter.
- <sup>F101</sup>[<sup>F102</sup>(3A) If an application under this section is accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purpose of considering the applicant's <sup>F103</sup>[<sup>F104</sup>suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in] a position (whether paid or unpaid) within subsection (3B), <sup>F105</sup>[<sup>F106</sup>or [<sup>F107</sup>the suitability of the applicant, or of a person living in the same household as the applicant, to be a foster parent or] to adopt a child,] the criminal record certificate shall also state—
- (a) whether the applicant is included <sup>F108</sup>[<sup>F109</sup>in—
    - (i) the list kept under section 1 of the <sup>M25</sup>Protection of Children Act 1999; [ the list kept under section 1(1) of the Protection of Children <sup>F110</sup>(ia) (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5);]
    - <sup>F111</sup>[<sup>F112</sup>(ii) . . . . .
    - <sup>F111</sup>[<sup>F112</sup>(iii) . . . . .]
- <sup>F113</sup>[<sup>F114</sup>(b) if he is included in the list kept under section 1 of the Protection of Children Act 1999 (c. 14), such details of his inclusion as may be prescribed;]
- <sup>F115</sup>[<sup>F116</sup>(c) whether he is subject to a direction under section 142 of the Education Act 2002; and
  - (d) if he is subject to a direction under that section, such details of the circumstances in which it was given as may be prescribed, including the grounds on which it was given.]
- (3B) A position is within this subsection if it is—
- (a) a child care position within the meaning of the Protection of Children Act 1999; [ a child care position within the meaning of the Protection of Children <sup>F117</sup>(aa) (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5);]
  - <sup>F118</sup>[<sup>F119</sup>(b) a position which involves work to which section 142 of the Education Act 2002 applies;]
  - <sup>F120</sup>[<sup>F121</sup>(c) . . . . .
  - (d) a position of such other description as may be prescribed; <sup>F122</sup>[<sup>F123</sup> . . . . .]
- [<sup>F124</sup>(3C) If an application under this section is accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purpose of considering the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(whether paid or unpaid) within subsection (3D), the criminal record certificate shall also state—

- (a) whether the applicant is included in the list kept under section 81 of the Care Standards Act 2000; and
- (b) if he is included in that list, such details of his inclusion as may be prescribed.

(3D) A position is within this subsection if it is—

- (a) a care position within the meaning of Part VII of the Care Standards Act 2000; or
- (b) a position of such other description as may be prescribed.]

<sup>F125</sup><sup>F126</sup>(3E) The references in subsections (3A) and (3C) to <sup>F127</sup>considering the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position falling within subsection (3B) or (3D) include references to <sup>F128</sup>—

- (a) considering the applicant's] suitability to be registered—
  - <sup>F129</sup>(a)] [ under Part II of the Care Standards Act 2000 (establishments and <sup>F129</sup>(i)] agencies);
  - <sup>F129</sup>(b)] [ under Part IV of that Act (social care workers); <sup>F130</sup>or]
  - <sup>F129</sup>(ii)] [ under Part 3 of the Regulation of Care (Scotland) Act 2001 (asp 8) <sup>F131</sup>(iii) (social workers); or]
  - <sup>F129</sup>(c)] [<sup>F132</sup>for child minding or providing day care under section 71 of <sup>F129</sup>(iv)] the Children Act 1989] or Article 118 of the <sup>M26</sup>Children (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 (child minding and day care) [<sup>F133</sup>; and
- (b) considering the applicant's application to have a care service, consisting of the provision of child minding or the day care of children, registered under Part 1 of the Regulation of Care (Scotland) Act 2001 (asp 8) (care services)].]

<sup>F134</sup><sup>F135</sup>(3F) The references in subsections (3A) and (3C) to considering the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position falling within subsection (3B) or (3D) include references to considering, for the purposes of Part 10A of the Children Act 1989 (child minding and day care in England and Wales), his suitability—

- (a) to look after or be in regular contact with children under the age of eight, or
- (b) in the case of an applicant for or holder of a certificate under section 79W of that Act, or a person prescribed under subsection (4) of that section, to look after children within the meaning of that section.]

(4) The Secretary of State shall send a copy of a criminal record certificate to the registered person who countersigned the application.

(5) In this section—

“central records” means such records of convictions and cautions held for the use of police forces generally as may be prescribed;

“exempted question” means a question in relation to which section 4(2)(a) or (b) of the <sup>M27</sup>Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 (effect of rehabilitation) has been excluded by an order of the Secretary of State under section 4(4);

“relevant matter” means—

- (i) a conviction within the meaning of the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974, including a spent conviction, and
- (ii) a caution.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## Textual Amendments

- F98** S. 113 repealed (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), ss. 163(1), 178(4)(d)(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(c)(d); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(a)(f)
- F99** Words in s. 113(1)(a) inserted (E.W.) (29.1.2004) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), [Sch. 35 para. 3\(2\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i)
- F100** Words in s. 113(1)(b) inserted (E.W.) (29.1.2004) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), [Sch. 35 para. 3\(2\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i)
- F101** S. 113(3A)(3B) insertion by 1999 c. 14, s. 8 extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(1\)\(a\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F102** S. 113(3A)(3B) inserted (E.W.N.I.) (12.3.2002 for E.W.) by 1999 c. 14, ss. 8(1), 14(2); S.I. 2002/1436, [art. 2](#)
- F103** S. 113(3A) substitution of words by 2000 c. 14, Sch. 4 para. 25(1) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(1\)\(b\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F104** Words in s. 113(3A) substituted (2.7.2001 for E, 1.4.2002 for W.) by 2000 c. 14, ss. 116, 122, Sch. 4 para. 25(1); S.I. 2001/2041, art. 2(1)(d)(i) (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 3, Sch.); S.I. 2002/920, [art. 3\(3\)\(d\)](#) (subject to art. 3(2)(4)-(10), Schs. 1-3)
- F105** S. 113(3A) insertion of words by 2000 c. 14, s. 104(2)(a) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(1\)\(b\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F106** Words in s. 113(3A) inserted (18.3.2002 for E.W.) by 2000 c. 14, ss. 104(2)(a), 122; S.I. 2002/629, [art. 2\(2\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#)
- F107** Words in s. 113(3A) substituted (1.6.2003 for E.W.) by [Adoption and Children Act 2002 \(c. 38\)](#), ss. [135\(2\)](#), 148(1) (with Sch. 4 paras. 6-8); S.I. 2003/366, art. 2(5)(b)
- F108** S. 113(3A) substitution of words by 2000 c. 14, s. 102(1) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(1\)\(b\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F109** S. 113(3A)(a)(i)-(iii)(b) and word substituted (18.3.2002 for E.W.) for s. 113(3A)(b) and words by 2000 c. 14, ss. 102(1), 122; S.I. 2002/629, [art. 2\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F110** S. 113(3A)(a)(ia) inserted (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(2\)\(a\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F111** S. 113(3A)(a)(ii)(iii) repealed (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 72(2)(a), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F112** S. 113(3A)(a)(ii)(iii) repeal by 2002 c. 32, Sch. 21 para. 72(2)(a) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(1\)\(c\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F113** S. 113(3A)(b) substitution by 2002 c. 32, Sch. 21 para. 72(2)(b) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(1\)\(c\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F114** S. 113(3A)(b) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 72\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F115** S. 113(3A)(c)(d) insertion by 2002 c. 32, Sch. 21 para. 72(2)(c) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), ss. [12\(1\)\(c\)](#), 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F116** S. 113(3A)(c)(d) inserted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 72\(2\)\(c\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F117** S. 113(3B)(aa) inserted (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(2)(b)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F118** S. 113(3B)(b) substitution by 2002 c. 32, Sch. 21 para. 72(3)(a) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(1)(c)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F119** S. 113(3B)(b) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 72(3)(a)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F120** S. 113(3B)(c) repealed (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 72(3)(b), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F121** S. 113(3B)(c) repeal by 2002 c. 32, Sch. 21 para. 72(3)(b) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(1)(c)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F122** Words in s. 113(3B) repealed (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 72(3)(c), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F123** S. 113(3B) repeal of words by 2002 c. 32, Sch. 21 para. 72(3)(c) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(1)(c)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F124** S. 113(3C)(3D) inserted (26.7.2004) by Care Standards Act 2000 (c. 14), **ss. 90(1)**, 122; S.I. 2004/1757, art. 2(b)
- F125** S. 113(3E) insertion by 2000 c. 14, s. 104(2)(b) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(1)(b)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F126** S. 113(3E) inserted (E.W.) (18.3.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by 2000 c. 14, **ss. 104(2)(b)**, 122; S.I. 2002/629, **art. 2(2)(b)(iii)(3)(b)**; S.I. 2003/933, art. 2(2)(i); S.I. 2003/501, art. 2(2)(c)
- F127** Words in s. 113(3E) inserted (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(2)(c)(i)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F128** S. 113(3E)(a) inserted (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(2)(c)(ii)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F129** S. 113(3E)(a)(i)(ii)(iv): s. 113(3E)(a)(b)(c) renumbered as s. 113(3E)(a)(i)(ii)(iv) (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(2)(c)(iii)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F130** Word in s. 113(3E)(a)(ii) repealed (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(2)(c)(iv)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F131** S. 113(3E)(a)(iii) inserted (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(2)(c)(v)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F132** Words in s. 113(3E)(c) substituted (E.) (20.1.2003) for the words "for child minding or providing day care under Part XA of the Children Act 1989" by The Education Act 2002 (Modification of Provisions) (No. 2) (England) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2953), **reg. 3**
- F133** S. 113(3E)(b) and word inserted (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(2)(c)(vi)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F134** S. 113(3F) insertion by 2002 c. 32, Sch. 13 para. 7(3) extended to Scotland (S.) (10.1.2005) by Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 5), **ss. 12(1)(c)**, 22(2); S.S.I. 2004/522, art. 2(1) (as substituted by S.S.I. 2004/556, art. 2)
- F135** S. 113(3F) inserted (1.10.2002 except in relation to W., 19.12.2002 otherwise) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 152, **Sch. 13 para. 7(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. 1

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C14** S. 113(3A)(a): power to modify conferred (S.) (10.1.2005) by [Protection of Children \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 5\)](#), **ss. 12(3), 22(2)**; [S.S.I. 2004/522](#), **art. 2(1)** (as substituted by [S.S.I. 2004/556](#), **art. 2**)
- C15** S. 113(3E)(c) modified (W.) (19.12.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3184\)](#), **reg. 8**

#### Commencement Information

- I8** S. 113 partly in force; s. 113 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135(1); s. 113 in force for E.W. at 1.3.2002 and in force for S. at 25.4.2002 by [S.I. 2002/413](#), **art. 2** and [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), **art. 4**

#### Marginal Citations

- M25** 1999 c. 14.  
**M26** [S.I. 1995/755 \(N.I. 2\)](#).  
**M27** 1974 c. 53.

### [<sup>F136</sup>113A] Criminal record certificates

- (1) The Secretary of State must issue a criminal record certificate to any individual who—
  - (a) makes an application in the prescribed manner and form, and
  - (b) pays in the prescribed manner any prescribed fee.
- (2) The application must—
  - (a) be countersigned by a registered person, and
  - (b) be accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purposes of an exempted question.
- (3) A criminal record certificate is a certificate which—
  - (a) gives the prescribed details of every relevant matter relating to the applicant which is recorded in central records, or
  - (b) states that there is no such matter.
- (4) The Secretary of State must send a copy of a criminal record certificate to the registered person who countersigned the application.
- (5) The Secretary of State may treat an application under this section as an application under section 113B if—
  - (a) in his opinion the certificate is required for a purpose prescribed under subsection (2) of that section,
  - (b) the registered person provides him with the statement required by that subsection, and
  - (c) the applicant consents and pays to the Secretary of State the amount (if any) by which the fee payable in relation to an application under that section exceeds the fee paid in relation to the application under this section.
- (6) In this section—

“central records” means such records of convictions and cautions held for the use of police forces generally as may be prescribed;

“exempted question” means a question in relation to which section 4(2)(a) or (b) of the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 (effect of rehabilitation) has been excluded by an order of the Secretary of State under section 4(4) of that Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“relevant matter” means—

- (a) a conviction within the meaning of the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974, including a spent conviction, and
- (b) a caution.

#### Textual Amendments

**F136** Ss. 113A-113F inserted (1.4.2006 for S. except for the insertion of s. 113E, 6.4.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 25.9.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 12.11.2007 for E.W. for specified purposes, 29.2.2008 for E.W. for specified purposes, 1.4.2008 for N.I., 9.3.2015 for E.W. for specified purposes) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), [ss. 163\(2\), 178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); [S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 7\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2006/2182, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2007/3064, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/306, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/697, art. 2\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2015/188, art. 2](#)

### 113B Enhanced criminal record certificates

- (1) The Secretary of State must issue an enhanced criminal record certificate to any individual who—
  - (a) makes an application in the prescribed manner and form, and
  - (b) pays in the prescribed manner any prescribed fee.
- (2) The application must—
  - (a) be countersigned by a registered person, and
  - (b) be accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for a prescribed purpose.
- (3) An enhanced criminal record certificate is a certificate which—
  - (a) gives the prescribed details of every relevant matter relating to the applicant which is recorded in central records and any information provided in accordance with subsection (4), or
  - (b) states that there is no such matter or information.
- (4) Before issuing an enhanced criminal record certificate the Secretary of State must request the chief officer of every relevant police force to provide any information which, in the chief officer's opinion—
  - (a) might be relevant for the purpose described in the statement under subsection (2), and
  - (b) ought to be included in the certificate.
- (5) The Secretary of State must also request the chief officer of every relevant police force to provide any information which, in the chief officer's opinion—
  - (a) might be relevant for the purpose described in the statement under subsection (2),
  - (b) ought not to be included in the certificate, in the interests of the prevention or detection of crime, and
  - (c) can, without harming those interests, be disclosed to the registered person.
- (6) The Secretary of State must send to the registered person who countersigned the application—
  - (a) a copy of the enhanced criminal record certificate, and
  - (b) any information provided in accordance with subsection (5).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (7) The Secretary of State may treat an application under this section as an application under section 113A if in his opinion the certificate is not required for a purpose prescribed under subsection (2).
- (8) If by virtue of subsection (7) the Secretary of State treats an application under this section as an application under section 113A, he must refund to the applicant the amount (if any) by which the fee paid in relation to the application under this section exceeds the fee payable in relation to an application under section 113A.
- (9) In this section—  
“central records”, “exempted question”, and “relevant matter” have the same meaning as in section 113A;  
“relevant police force”, in relation to an application under this section, means a police force which is a relevant police force in relation to that application under regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (10) For the purposes of this section references to a police force include any of the following—  
(a) the Royal Navy Regulating Branch;  
(b) the Royal Marines Police;  
(c) the Royal Military Police;  
(d) the Royal Air Force Police;  
(e) the Ministry of Defence Police;  
(f) the National Criminal Intelligence Service;  
(g) the National Crime Squad;  
(h) the British Transport Police;  
(i) the Civil Nuclear Constabulary;  
(j) the States of Jersey Police Force;  
(k) the salaried police force of the Island of Guernsey;  
(l) the Isle of Man Constabulary;  
(m) a body with functions in any country or territory outside the British Islands which correspond to those of a police force in any part of the United Kingdom,  
and any reference to the chief officer of a police force includes the person responsible for the direction of a body mentioned in this subsection.
- (11) For the purposes of this section each of the following must be treated as if it were a police force—  
(a) the Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs (and for this purpose a reference to the chief officer of a police force must be taken to be a reference to any one of the Commissioners);  
(b) the Serious Organised Crime Agency (and for this purpose a reference to the chief officer of a police force must be taken to be a reference to the Director General of the Agency);  
(c) such other department or body as is prescribed (and regulations may prescribe in relation to the department or body the person to whom a reference to the chief officer is to be taken to be).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F136** Ss. 113A-113F inserted (1.4.2006 for S. except for the insertion of s. 113E, 6.4.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 25.9.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 12.11.2007 for E.W. for specified purposes, 29.2.2008 for E.W. for specified purposes, 1.4.2008 for N.I., 9.3.2015 for E.W. for specified purposes) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), [ss. 163\(2\), 178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); [S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 7\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2006/2182, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2007/3064, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/306, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/697, art. 2\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2015/188, art. 2](#)

### 113C Criminal record certificates: suitability relating to children

- (1) If an application under section 113A or 113B is accompanied by a children's suitability statement the criminal record certificate or enhanced criminal record certificate (as the case may be) must also state—
  - (a) whether the applicant is included in a specified children's list;
  - (b) if he is included in such a list, such details of his inclusion as may be prescribed;
  - (c) whether he is subject to a specified children's direction;
  - (d) if he is subject to such a direction, the grounds on which it was given and such details as may be prescribed of the circumstances in which it was given.
- (2) A children's suitability statement is a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purpose of considering—
  - (a) the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position (whether paid or unpaid) within subsection (5),
  - (b) the applicant's suitability to be a foster parent or to adopt a child,
  - (c) the applicant's suitability to be a child's special guardian for the purposes of sections 14A and 14C of the Children Act 1989,
  - (d) the applicant's suitability to have a child placed with him by virtue of section 70 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995 or by virtue of section 5(2), (3) and (4) of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968, or
  - (e) the suitability of a person living in the same household as the applicant to be a person mentioned in paragraph (b) or (c) or to have a child placed with him as mentioned in paragraph (d).
- (3) Each of the following is a specified children's list—
  - (a) the list kept under section 1 of the Protection of Children Act 1999;
  - (b) the list kept under section 1(1) of the Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003;
  - (c) the list kept under Article 3 of the Protection of Children and Vulnerable Adults (Northern Ireland) Order 2003;
  - (d) any list kept for the purposes of regulations under Article 70(2)(e) or 88A(2)(b) of the Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986;
  - (e) any such other list as the Secretary of State specifies by order if he thinks that the list corresponds to a list specified in paragraphs (a) to (c) and is kept in pursuance of [<sup>F137</sup>the law of] a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (4) Each of the following is a specified children's direction—
  - (a) a direction under section 142 of the Education Act 2002;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) anything which the Secretary of State specifies by order which he thinks corresponds to such a direction and which is done for the purposes of the law of Scotland or of Northern Ireland or of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (5) A position falls within this subsection if it is any of the following—
- (a) a child care position within the meaning of the Protection of Children Act 1999;
  - (b) a child care position within the meaning of the Protection of Children (Scotland) Act 2003;
  - (c) a child care position within the meaning of Chapter 1 of Part 2 of the Protection of Children and Vulnerable Adults (Northern Ireland) Order 2003;
  - (d) a position, employment or further employment in which may be prohibited or restricted by regulations under Article 70(2)(e) or 88A(2)(b) of the Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986;
  - (e) a position which involves work to which section 142 of the Education Act 2002 applies;
  - (f) a position of such other description as may be prescribed.
- (6) An order under subsection (4)(b) may make such modifications of subsection (1)(d) as the Secretary of State thinks necessary or expedient in consequence of the order.

#### Textual Amendments

**F136** Ss. 113A-113F inserted (1.4.2006 for S. except for the insertion of s. 113E, 6.4.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 25.9.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 12.11.2007 for E.W. for specified purposes, 29.2.2008 for E.W. for specified purposes, 1.4.2008 for N.I., 9.3.2015 for E.W. for specified purposes) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), [ss. 163\(2\)](#), [178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2006/378](#), [art. 7\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2006/2182](#), [art. 2](#); [S.I. 2007/3064](#), [art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/306](#), [art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/697](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2015/188](#), [art. 2](#)

**F137** Words in s. 113C(3)(e) inserted (1.1.2006) by [The Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(Amendment\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3496\)](#), [arts. 1\(1\)](#), [6\(1\)](#)

### 113D Criminal record certificates: suitability relating to adults

- (1) If an application under section 113A or 113B is accompanied by an adults' suitability statement the criminal record certificate or enhanced criminal record certificate (as the case may be) must also state—
- (a) whether the applicant is included in a specified adults' list;
  - (b) if he is included in such a list, such details of his inclusion as may be prescribed.
- (2) An adults' suitability statement is a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purpose of considering the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position (whether paid or unpaid) falling within subsection (4).
- (3) Each of the following is a specified adults' list—
- (a) the list kept under section 81 of the Care Standards Act 2000;
  - (b) the list kept under Article 35 of the Protection of Children and Vulnerable Adults (Northern Ireland) Order 2003;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) any such other list as the Secretary of State specifies by order if he thinks that the list corresponds to a list specified in paragraph (a) or (b) and is kept in pursuance of the law of Scotland or of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (4) A position falls within this subsection if it is any of the following—
  - (a) a care position within the meaning of Part 7 of the Care Standards Act 2000;
  - (b) a care position within the meaning of Part 3 of the Protection of Children and Vulnerable Adults (Northern Ireland) Order 2003;
  - (c) a position concerned with providing a care service (as defined by section 2(1) of the Regulation of Care (Scotland) Act 2001);
  - (d) a position of such other description as may be prescribed.

#### Textual Amendments

**F136** Ss. 113A-113F inserted (1.4.2006 for S. except for the insertion of s. 113E, 6.4.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 25.9.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 12.11.2007 for E.W. for specified purposes, 29.2.2008 for E.W. for specified purposes, 1.4.2008 for N.I., 9.3.2015 for E.W. for specified purposes) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), [ss. 163\(2\), 178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), art. 2(1)(c); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 7(a); [S.I. 2006/2182](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2007/3064](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2008/306](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2008/697](#), art. 2(a); [S.I. 2015/188](#), art. 2

### 113E Criminal record certificates: specified children's and adults' lists: urgent cases

- (1) Subsection (2) applies to an application under section 113A or 113B if—
  - (a) it is accompanied by a children's suitability statement,
  - (b) the registered person requests an urgent preliminary response, and
  - (c) the applicant pays in the prescribed manner such additional fee as is prescribed in respect of the application.
- (2) The Secretary of State must notify the registered person—
  - (a) if the applicant is not included in a specified children's list, of that fact;
  - (b) if the applicant is included in such a list, of the details prescribed for the purposes of section 113C(1)(b) above;
  - (c) if the applicant is not subject to a specified children's direction, of that fact;
  - (d) if the applicant is subject to such a direction, of the grounds on which the direction was given and the details prescribed for the purposes of section 113C(1)(d) above.
- (3) Subsection (4) applies to an application under section 113A or 113B if—
  - (a) it is accompanied by an adults' suitability statement,
  - (b) the registered person requests an urgent preliminary response, and
  - (c) the applicant pays in the prescribed manner such additional fee as is prescribed in respect of the application.
- (4) The Secretary of State must notify the registered person either—
  - (a) that the applicant is not included in a specified adults' list, or
  - (b) that a criminal record certificate or enhanced criminal record certificate will be issued in due course.
- (5) In this section—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“criminal record certificate” has the same meaning as in section 113A;  
“enhanced criminal record certificate” has the same meaning as in section 113B;  
“children's suitability statement” “, specified children's direction” and “specified children's list” have the same meaning as in section 113C;  
“adults' suitability statement” and “specified adults' list” have the same meaning as in section 113D.

#### Textual Amendments

**F136** Ss. 113A-113F inserted (1.4.2006 for S. except for the insertion of s. 113E, 6.4.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 25.9.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 12.11.2007 for E.W. for specified purposes, 29.2.2008 for E.W. for specified purposes, 1.4.2008 for N.I., 9.3.2015 for E.W. for specified purposes) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), [ss. 163\(2\), 178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); [S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 7\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2006/2182, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2007/3064, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/306, art. 2](#); [S.I. 2008/697, art. 2\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2015/188, art. 2](#)

#### 113F Criminal record certificates: supplementary

- (1) References in sections 113C(2) and 113D(2) to considering the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position falling within section 113C(5) or 113D(4) include references to considering—
- (a) for the purposes of Part 10A of the Children Act 1989 (child minding and day care in England and Wales), the applicant's suitability to look after or be in regular contact with children under the age of eight;
  - (b) for the purposes of that Part of that Act, in the case of an applicant for or holder of a certificate under section 79W of that Act, or a person prescribed under subsection (4) of that section, his suitability to look after children within the meaning of that section;
  - (c) the applicant's suitability to be registered for child minding or providing day care under section 71 of the Children Act 1989 or Article 118 of the Children (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 (child minding and day care);
  - (d) for the purposes of section 3 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (registration of teachers with the General Teaching Council for England or the General Teaching Council for Wales) or of section 6 of the Teaching Council (Scotland) Act 1965 (registration of teachers with the General Teaching Council for Scotland), the applicant's suitability to be a teacher;
  - (e) the applicant's suitability to be registered under Part 2 of the Care Standards Act 2000 (establishments and agencies);
  - (f) the applicant's suitability to be registered under Part 4 of that Act (social care workers);
  - (g) the applicant's suitability to be registered under Part 1 of the Regulation of Care (Scotland) Act 2001 (applications by persons seeking to provide a care service);
  - (h) the applicant's suitability to be registered under Part 3 of that Act (social workers and other social service workers);
  - (i) the applicant's application to have a care service, consisting of the provision of child minding or the day care of children, registered under Part 1 of that Act (care services);

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (j) the applicant's suitability to be registered under Part 1 of the Health and Personal Social Services Act (Northern Ireland) 2001 (social care workers);
  - (k) the applicant's suitability to be registered under Part 3 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 (regulation of establishments and agencies).
- (2) The power to make an order under section 113C or 113D is exercisable by statutory instrument, but no such order may be made unless a draft of the order has been laid before and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.
- (3) If the power mentioned in subsection (2) is exercised by the Scottish Ministers, the reference in that subsection to each House of Parliament must be construed as a reference to the Scottish Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F136** Ss. 113A-113F inserted (1.4.2006 for S. except for the insertion of s. 113E, 6.4.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 25.9.2006 for E.W. for specified purposes, 12.11.2007 for E.W. for specified purposes, 29.2.2008 for E.W. for specified purposes, 1.4.2008 for N.I., 9.3.2015 for E.W. for specified purposes) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), **ss. 163(2)**, 178(4)(d)(8); [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), art. 2(1)(c); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 7(a); [S.I. 2006/2182](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2007/3064](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2008/306](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2008/697](#), art. 2(a); [S.I. 2015/188](#), art. 2

## 114 Criminal record certificates: Crown employment.

- (1) The Secretary of State shall issue a criminal record certificate to any individual who—
- (a) makes an application under this section in the prescribed [<sup>F138</sup>manner and] form, and
  - (b) [<sup>F139</sup>pays in the prescribed manner any prescribed fee]
- (2) An application under this section must be accompanied by a statement by a Minister of the Crown that the certificate is required for the purposes of an exempted question asked in the course of considering the applicant's suitability for an appointment by or under the Crown.
- (3) [<sup>F140</sup>Section 113(3) to (5)] [<sup>F140</sup>Sections 113A(3) to (6) and 113C to 113F] shall apply in relation to this section with any necessary modifications.

#### Textual Amendments

**F138** Words in s. 114(1)(a) inserted (S.) (7.2.2006) by [The Police Act 1997 Amendment \(Scotland\) Order 2006 \(S.S.I. 2006/50\)](#), arts. 1(1), **2(3)(a)**

**F139** S. 114(1)(b) substituted (S.) (7.2.2006) by [The Police Act 1997 Amendment \(Scotland\) Order 2006 \(S.S.I. 2006/50\)](#), arts. 1(1), **2(3)(b)**

**F140** Words in s. 114(3) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 1.4.2008 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 2**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), art. 2(1)(e); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 7(c); [S.I. 2008/697](#), art. 2(e)

#### Commencement Information

**I9** S. 114 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by [S.I. 2002/413](#), **art. 2**  
S. 114 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), **art. 4**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 115 Enhanced criminal record certificates. **E+W+N.I.**

- (1) The Secretary of State shall issue an enhanced criminal record certificate to any individual who—
  - (a) makes an application under this section in the prescribed [<sup>F141</sup>manner and] form countersigned by a registered person, and
  - (b) pays [<sup>F142</sup>in the prescribed manner] any fee that is payable in relation to the application under regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) An application under this section must be accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purposes of an exempted question asked [<sup>F143</sup>for such purposes as may be prescribed under this subsection].
- (3) A position is within this subsection if it involves regularly caring for, training, supervising or being in sole charge of persons aged under 18.
- (4) A position is within this subsection if—
  - (a) it is of a kind specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) it involves regularly caring for, training, supervising or being in sole charge of persons aged 18 or over.
- (5) The matters referred to in subsection (2)(b) are—
  - (a) a certificate for the purposes of sections 19 or 27(1) or (5) of the <sup>M28</sup>Gaming Act 1968 (gaming);
  - (b) a certificate of consent, or a licence, for any purpose of Schedule 2 to that Act (licences);
  - (c) registration or certification in accordance with Schedule 1A, 2 or 2A to the <sup>M29</sup>Lotteries and Amusements Act 1976 (societies, schemes and lottery managers);
  - (d) a licence under section 5 or 6 of the <sup>M30</sup>National Lottery etc. Act 1993 (running or promoting lotteries);
  - [<sup>F144</sup>(da) a personal licence under the Licensing Act 2003;]
  - (e) registration under section 71 of the <sup>M31</sup>Children Act 1989 [<sup>F145</sup>registration for child minding or providing day care under Part XA of that Act [<sup>F146</sup>, or the holding of a certificate under section 79W of that Act,] or registration under] Article 118 of the <sup>M32</sup>Children (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 (child minding and day care);
  - [<sup>F147</sup>(ea) registration under Part II of the Care Standards Act 2000 (establishments and agencies);
  - (eb) registration under Part IV of that Act (social care workers);]
  - (f) the placing of children with foster parents in accordance with any provision of, or made by virtue of, the Children Act 1989 or the <sup>M33</sup>Children (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 or the exercise of any duty under or by virtue of section 67 of that Act or Article 108 of that Order (welfare of privately fostered children);
  - (g) the approval of any person as a foster carer by virtue of section 5(2), (3) and (4) of the <sup>M34</sup>Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968, the exercise by a local authority of their functions under the <sup>M35</sup>Foster Children (Scotland) Act 1984 or the placing of children with foster parents by virtue of section 70 of the <sup>M36</sup>Children (Scotland) Act 1995 (disposal of referral by children’s hearing).
  - [<sup>F148</sup>(h) a decision made by an adoption agency within the meaning of [<sup>F149</sup>section 2 of the Adoption and Children Act 2002] as to a person’s suitability to adopt a child.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) An enhanced criminal record certificate is a certificate which—
- (a) gives—
    - (i) the prescribed details of every relevant matter relating to the applicant which is recorded in central records, and
    - (ii) any information provided in accordance with subsection (7), or
  - (b) states that there is no such matter or information.
- [<sup>F150</sup>(6A) If an application under this section is accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purpose of considering the applicant's suitability for a position (whether paid or unpaid) falling within subsection (3B) of section 113, [<sup>F151</sup>or [<sup>F152</sup>the suitability of the applicant, or of a person living in the same household as the applicant, to be a foster parent or] to adopt a child,], the enhanced criminal record certificate shall also state—
- (a) whether the applicant is included [<sup>F153</sup> in—
    - (i) the list kept under section 1 of the <sup>M37</sup>Protection of Children Act 1999;
    - <sup>F154</sup>(ii) . . . . .
    - <sup>F154</sup>(iii) . . . . .
  - [<sup>F155</sup>(b) if he is included in the list kept under section 1 of the Protection of Children Act 1999 (c. 14), such details of his inclusion as may be prescribed;]]
  - [<sup>F156</sup>(c) whether he is subject to a direction under section 142 of the Education Act 2002; and
  - (d) if he is subject to a direction under that section, such details of the circumstances in which it was given as may be prescribed, including the grounds on which it was given.]]
- [<sup>F157</sup>(6B) If an application under this section is accompanied by a statement by the registered person that the certificate is required for the purpose of considering the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position (whether paid or unpaid) falling within subsection (3D) of section 113, the enhanced criminal record certificate shall also state—
- (a) whether the applicant is included in the list kept under section 81 of the Care Standards Act 2000; and
  - (b) if he is included in that list, such details of his inclusion as may be prescribed.]
- [<sup>F158</sup>(6BA) The references in subsections (6A) and (6B) to considering the applicant's suitability to be employed, supplied to work, found work or given work in a position falling within section 113(3B) or (3D) include references to considering, for the purposes of Part 10A of the Children Act 1989 (child minding and day care in England and Wales) his suitability—
- (a) to look after or be in regular contact with children under the age of eight, or
  - (b) in the case of an applicant for or holder of a certificate under section 79W of that Act, or a person prescribed under subsection (4) of that section, to look after children within the meaning of that section.]
- [<sup>F159</sup>(6C) This subsection applies to an individual included or seeking inclusion in any list prepared for the purposes of Part 2 of the National Health Service Act 1977 (c. 49) of—
- (a) medical practitioners undertaking to provide general medical services,
  - (b) persons undertaking to provide general dental services,
  - (c) persons undertaking to provide general ophthalmic services, or
  - (d) persons undertaking to provide pharmaceutical services.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6D) This subsection applies to an individual who is—
- (a) a director of a body corporate included or seeking inclusion in a list referred to in subsection (6C)(b) or (c),
  - (b) a member of a limited liability partnership included or seeking inclusion in a list referred to in subsection (6C)(c),
  - (c) a member of the body of persons controlling a body corporate (whether or not a limited liability partnership) included or seeking inclusion in a list referred to in subsection (6C)(d).
- (6E) This subsection applies to an individual included or seeking inclusion in any list prepared by a [F17Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority under—
- (a) section 28DA of the National Health Service Act 1977 or section 8ZA of the National Health Service (Primary Care) Act 1997 (lists of persons who may perform personal medical services or personal dental services), or
  - (b) section 43D of the 1977 Act (supplementary lists),
- and to an individual included or seeking inclusion in any list corresponding to a list referred to in paragraph (a) prepared by a [F160Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by virtue of regulations made under section 41 of the Health and Social Care Act 2001 (which provides for the application of enactments in relation to local pharmaceutical services).]
- (7) Before issuing an enhanced criminal record certificate the Secretary of State shall request the chief officer of every relevant police force to provide any information which, in the chief officer’s opinion—
- (a) might be relevant for the purpose described in the statement under subsection (2), and
  - (b) ought to be included in the certificate.
- (8) The Secretary of State shall also request the chief officer of every relevant police force to provide any information which, in the chief officer’s opinion—
- (a) might be relevant for the purpose described in the statement under subsection (2),
  - (b) ought not to be included in the certificate, in the interests of the prevention or detection of crime, and
  - (c) can, without harming those interests, be disclosed to the registered person.
- (9) The Secretary of State shall send to the registered person who countersigned an application under this section—
- (a) a copy of the enhanced criminal record certificate, and
  - (b) any information provided in accordance with subsection (8).
- (10) In this section—
- “central records”, “exempted question” and “relevant matter” have the same meaning as in section 113; and
- “relevant police force”, in relation to an application under this section, means a police force which is a relevant police force in relation to that application under regulations made by the Secretary of State.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Extent Information

- E1** This version of this provision extends to England and Wales and Northern Ireland only; a separate version has been created for Scotland only

### Textual Amendments

- F141** Words in s. 115(1)(a) inserted (E.W.) (29.1.2004) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), [Sch. 35 para. 4\(2\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i)
- F142** Words in s. 115(1)(b) inserted (E.W.) (29.1.2004) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), [Sch. 35 para. 4\(2\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i)
- F143** Words in s. 115(2) substituted (E.W.) for s. 115(2)(a)-(c) (29.1.2004 for specified purposes) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), [Sch. 35 para. 4\(3\)](#); S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(ii)
- F144** S. 115(5)(da) inserted (24.11.2005) by [Licensing Act 2003 \(c. 17\)](#), s. 201(2), [Sch. 6 para. 116](#) (with ss. 2(3), 15(2), 195); S.I. 2005/3056, art. 2(2)
- F145** Words in s. 115(5)(e) substituted (2.7.2001 for E., 1.4.2002 for W.) by [2000 c. 14](#), ss. 116, 122, [Sch. 4 para. 25\(2\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2001/2041, [art. 2\(2\)\(d\)\(i\)](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)); S.I. 2002/920, arts. 1(4), 3(3) (subject to [art. 3\(4\)-\(10\)](#)) and to transitional provisions in [Schs. 1-3](#))
- F146** Words in s. 115(5)(e) inserted (E.W.) (1.10.2002 except in relation to W., 19.12.2002 otherwise) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 152, [Sch. 13 para. 8\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F147** S. 115(5)(ea)(eb) inserted (E.W.) (1.4.2002 for specified purposes for E.W., 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force for E.W.) by [2000 c. 14](#), ss. 104(3)(a)(i), 122; S.I. 2002/629, [art. 2\(3\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2003/501, [art. 2\(2\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2003/933, [art. 2\(2\)\(i\)](#)
- F148** S. 115(5)(h) inserted (18.3.2002 for E.W.) by [2000 c. 14](#), ss. 104(3)(a)(ii), 122; S.I. 2002/629, [art. 2\(2\)\(b\)\(iv\)](#)
- F149** Words in s. 115(5)(h) substituted (30.12.2005) by [Adoption and Children Act 2002 \(c. 38\)](#), s. 148(1), [Sch. 3 para. 93](#) (with [Sch. 4 paras. 6-8](#)); S.I. 2005/2213, art. 2(o)
- F150** S. 115(6A) inserted (E.W.N.I.) (12.3.2002 for E.W.) by [1999 c. 14](#), ss. 8(2), 14(2); S.I. 2002/1436, [art. 2](#)
- F151** Words in s. 115(6A) inserted (18.3.2002 for E.W.) by [2000 c. 14](#), ss. 104(3)(b), 122; S.I. 2002/629, [art. 2\(2\)\(b\)\(v\)](#)
- F152** Words in s. 115(6A) substituted (1.6.2003 for E.W.) by [Adoption and Children Act 2002 \(c. 38\)](#), ss. 135(3), 148(1) (with [Sch. 4 paras. 6-8](#)); S.I. 2003/366, art. 2(5)(b)
- F153** S. 115(6A)(a)(i)-(iii)(b) and word substituted (18.3.2002 for E.W.) for s. 115(6A)(b) and words by [2000 c. 14](#), ss. 102(2), 122; S.I. 2002/629, [art. 2\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F154** S. 115(6A)(a)(ii)(iii) repealed (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 73\(a\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, [Sch. Pt. II](#); S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F155** S. 115(6A)(b) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 73\(b\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, [Sch. Pt. II](#); S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F156** S. 115(6A)(c)(d) inserted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.6.2003 for E.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 73\(c\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, [Sch. Pt. II](#); S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3
- F157** S. 115(6B) inserted (26.7.2004) by [Care Standards Act 2000 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 90(2), 122; S.I. 2004/1757, art. 2(b)
- F158** S. 115(6BA) inserted (E.W.) (1.10.2002 except in relation to W., 19.12.2002 otherwise) by virtue of [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 152, [Sch. 13 para. 8\(3\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F159** S. 115(6C)-(6E) inserted (E.W.) (1.4.2002 for E., 1.7.2002 for W.) by [2001 c. 15](#), s. 19(3) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, art. 2(3), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)); S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F160** Words in s. 115(6E) inserted (E.W.) (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), s. 2(5), [Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 64](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C16** S. 115 modified (temp.) (E.) (1.4.2004) by [The General Medical Services and Personal Medical Services Transitional and Consequential Provisions Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/865\)](#), arts. 1(1), **116** (with art. 1(3))

#### Commencement Information

- I10** S. 115 partly in force; s. 115 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135(1); s. 115 in force for E.W. at 1.3.2002 by [S.I. 2002/413](#), **art. 2**; s. 115(4) in force for S. at 11.3.2002 by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), **art. 3** and s. 115 otherwise in force for S. at 25.4.2002 by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), **art. 4**

#### Marginal Citations

- M28** 1968 c. 65.  
**M29** 1976 c. 32.  
**M30** 1993 c. 39.  
**M31** 1989 c. 41.  
**M32** [S.I. 1995/755 \(N.I. 2\)](#).  
**M33** [S.I. 1995/755 \(N.I. 2\)](#).  
**M34** 1968 c. 49.  
**M35** 1984 c. 56.  
**M36** 1995 c. 36.  
**M37** 1999 c. 14.

### <sup>F336</sup>**115 Enhanced criminal record certificates.** **S**

#### Extent Information

- E6** This version of this provision extends to Scotland only; a separate version has been created for England and Wales and Northern Ireland only

#### Textual Amendments

- F336** S. 115 repealed (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), ss. 163(1), 178(4)(d)(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), art. 2(1)(c)(d); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 7(a)(f)

### **116 Enhanced criminal record certificates: judicial appointments and Crown employment.**

- (1) The Secretary of State shall issue an enhanced criminal record certificate to any individual who—
- makes an application under this section in the prescribed [<sup>F161</sup>manner and] form, and
  - [<sup>F162</sup>pays in the prescribed manner any prescribed fee]
- (2) An application under this section must be accompanied by a statement by a Minister of the Crown, or a person nominated by a Minister of the Crown, that the certificate is required for the purposes of an exempted question asked in the course of considering the applicant's suitability for—
- a judicial appointment, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) an appointment by or under the Crown to a position [F163to which subsection (3) or (4) of section 115 applies][F163of such description as may be prescribed].
- (3) [F164Section 115(6) to (10)][F164Sections 113B(3) to (11) and 113C to 113F] shall apply in relation to this section with any necessary modifications.

#### Textual Amendments

- F161** Words in s. 116(1)(a) inserted (S.) (7.2.2006) by [The Police Act 1997 Amendment \(Scotland\) Order 2006 \(S.S.I. 2006/50\)](#), arts. 1(1), **2(4)(a)**
- F162** S. 116(1)(b) substituted (S.) (7.2.2006) by [The Police Act 1997 Amendment \(Scotland\) Order 2006 \(S.S.I. 2006/50\)](#), arts. 1(1), **2(4)(b)**
- F163** Words in s. 116(2)(b) substituted (E.W.N.I.) (29.1.2004 for specified purposes for E.W., 6.4.2006 for E.W. in so far as not already in force, 1.4.2008 for N.I.) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), **Sch. 35 para. 5**; S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(ii); S.I. 2006/751, art. 2(c)(i); S.I. 2008/694, art. 2
- F164** Words in s. 116(3) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 1.4.2008 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 3(b)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2008/697, art. 2(e)

#### Commencement Information

- I11** S. 116 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by [S.I. 2002/413](#), **art. 2**  
 S. 116 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), art. 4

### 117 Disputes about accuracy of certificates.

- (1) Where an applicant for a certificate under any of sections 112 to 116 believes that the information contained in the certificate is inaccurate he may make an application in writing to the Secretary of State for a new certificate.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall consider any application under this section; and where he is of the opinion that the information in the certificate is inaccurate he shall issue a new certificate.

#### Commencement Information

- I12** S. 117 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by [S.I. 2002/413](#), **art. 2**  
 S. 117 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), **art. 4**

### 118 Evidence of identity.

- (1) The Secretary of State may refuse to issue a certificate under this Part, or to consider an application under section 117 [F165or 120], unless the application is supported by such evidence of identity as he may require.
- (2) In particular, the Secretary of State may refuse to issue a certificate or consider an application unless the applicant—
- (a) has his fingerprints taken at such place and in such manner as may be prescribed, and
  - (b) pays the prescribed fee to such person as may be prescribed.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F166</sup>(2A) For the purpose of verifying evidence of identity supplied in pursuance of subsection (1) the Secretary of State may obtain such information as he thinks is appropriate from data held—
- (a) by the United Kingdom Passport Agency;
  - (b) by the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency;
  - (c) by Driver and Vehicle Licensing Northern Ireland;
  - (d) by the Secretary of State in connection with keeping records of national insurance numbers;
  - (e) by such other persons or for such purposes as is prescribed.]
- (3) Regulations dealing with the taking of fingerprints may make provision requiring their destruction in specified circumstances and by specified persons.
- (4) Regulations prescribing a fee for the purposes of subsection (2)(b) shall make provision for a refund in cases of an application under section 117 where a new certificate is issued.

#### Textual Amendments

**F165** Words in s. 118(1) inserted (1.7.2005 for S., 1.7.2005 for E.W., 1.4.2008 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), ss. 164\(2\), 178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); S.S.I. 2005/358, art. 2(c); S.I. 2005/1521, art. 3(3)(a); S.I. 2008/697, art. 2(b)

**F166** S. 118(2A) inserted (1.7.2005 for S., 1.7.2005 for E.W., 1.4.2008 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), ss. 164\(3\), 178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); S.S.I. 2005/358, art. 2(c); S.I. 2005/1521, art. 3(3)(a); S.I. 2008/697, art. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

**I13** S. 118 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by [S.I. 2002/413, art. 2](#)  
S. 118 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2002/124, art. 4](#)

## 119 Sources of information.

- (1) Any person who holds records of convictions or cautions for the use of police forces generally shall make those records available to the Secretary of State [<sup>F167</sup>for the purposes of an application [<sup>F168</sup>(whether for a certificate or for registration)] under this Part.] [<sup>F167</sup>for the purpose of enabling him to carry out his functions under this Part in relation to—
- (a) any application for a certificate or for registration; or
  - (b) the determination of whether a person should continue to be a registered person.]
- [<sup>F169</sup>(1A) Any person who keeps a list mentioned in [<sup>F170</sup>section 113(3A) or (3C)] [<sup>F170</sup>section 113C(3) or 113D(3)] above shall make the contents of that list available to the Secretary of State for the purpose of enabling him to carry out his functions under this Part in relation to—
- (a) any application for a certificate or for registration; or
  - (b) the determination of whether a person should continue to be a registered person.]
- (2) Where the chief officer of a police force receives a request under section [<sup>F171</sup>115] [<sup>F171</sup>113B] or 116 he shall comply with it as soon as practicable.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The Secretary of State shall pay to the appropriate police authority, <sup>F172</sup>... [<sup>F173</sup>the prescribed fee][<sup>F173</sup>such fee as he thinks appropriate] for information provided in accordance with [<sup>F174</sup>subsection (2)][<sup>F174</sup>section 120A(4) or subsection (2) of this section].
- (4) Any person who holds records of fingerprints for the use of police forces generally shall make those records available to the Secretary of State [<sup>F167</sup>for the purposes of an application under this Part.][<sup>F167</sup>for the purpose of enabling him to carry out his functions under this Part in relation to—
- (a) any application for a certificate or for registration; or
  - (b) the determination of whether a person should continue to be a registered person.]
- (5) No proceedings shall lie against the Secretary of State by reason of an inaccuracy in the information made available or provided to him in accordance with this section.
- <sup>F175</sup>(6) For the purposes of this section references to a police force include any body mentioned in subsections (10)(a) to (i) and (11) of section 113B and references to a chief officer must be construed accordingly.
- (7) In the case of such a body the reference in subsection (3) to the appropriate police authority must be construed as a reference to such body as is prescribed.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F167** Words in s. 119(1)(4) substituted (E.W.N.I.) (19.6.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 134(2)(a); S.I. 2001/2223, art. 2(1)(c)
- F168** Words in s. 119(1) inserted (S.) (27.6.2003) by Criminal Justice (Scotland) Act 2003 (asp 7), ss. 70(4), 89(2); S.S.I. 2003/288, art. 2, sch.
- F169** S. 119(1A) inserted (E.W.N.I.) (19.6.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 134(2)(b); S.I. 2001/2223, art. 2(1)(c)
- F170** Words in s. 119(1A) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W.) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(4)(e)(8), Sch. 14 para. 4(a); S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c)
- F171** Word in s. 119(2) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W.) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(4)(e)(8), Sch. 14 para. 4(b); S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c)
- F172** Words in s. 119 repealed (3.7.2000) by 1999 c. 29, ss. 325, 423, Sch. 27 para. 112, Sch. 34 Pt. VII (with Sch. 12 para. 9(1)); S.I. 2000/1648, art. 2, Sch.
- F173** Words in s. 119(3) substituted (1.7.2005 for E.W., 1.4.2006 for S., 1.4.2008 for N.I.) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), ss. 165(1)(a), 178(4)(d)(8); S.I. 2005/1521, art. 3(3)(b); S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(c); S.I. 2008/697, art. 2(c)
- F174** Words in s. 119(3) substituted (E.W.N.I.) (19.6.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 134(2)(c); S.I. 2001/2223, art. 2(1)(c)
- F175** S. 119(6)(7) inserted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 1.4.2008 for N.I.) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), ss. 165(1)(b), 178(4)(d)(8); S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(c); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(d); S.I. 2008/697, art. 2(c)

#### Commencement Information

- I14** S. 119 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by S.I. 2002/413, art. 2  
S. 119 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by S.S.I. 2002/124, art. 4

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F176</sup> **119A** Further sources of information: Scotland

- (1) Any person who holds, in Scotland, records of convictions for the use of police forces generally shall make those records available to the Scottish Ministers for the purpose of enabling them to carry out their functions under this Part in relation to the determination of whether a person should continue to be a person registered under section 120.
- (2) Where a person holds records of convictions or cautions for the use of police forces generally (but is not required by subsection (1) or section 119(1) to make those records available to the Scottish Ministers) the Scottish Ministers may request that person to make those records available to them; and they may also request that information kept [<sup>F177</sup> in a list mentioned in section 113C(3) or 113D(3)] be made so available.
- (3) In subsection (1), “person” does not include—
  - (a) a public body; or
  - (b) a holder of a public office,unless that person is a Scottish public authority (as defined in section 126(1) of the Scotland Act 1998 (c. 46)).
- (4) This section is without prejudice to section 119; and subsection (5) of that section shall apply in relation to records made available in accordance with this section as it does in relation to information made available in accordance with that section.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F176** S. 119A inserted (S.) (1.4.2006) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), ss. **70(5)**, 89(2); S.S.I. 2006/168, art. 2

**F177** Words in s. 119A(2) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), [Sch. 14 para. 5](#); S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e)

**120 Registered persons.** **E+W+N.I.**

- (1) For the purposes of this Part a registered person is a person who is listed in a register to be maintained by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) Subject to [<sup>F178</sup> section 120A and] regulations under subsection (3), the Secretary of State shall include in the register any person who applies to him in writing to be registered and satisfies the conditions in subsections (4) to (6).
- <sup>F179</sup>(3) .....
- (4) A person applying for registration under this section must be—
  - (a) a body corporate or unincorporate,
  - (b) a person appointed to an office by virtue of any enactment, or
  - (c) an individual who employs others in the course of a business.
- (5) A body applying for registration under this section must satisfy the Secretary of State that it—
  - (a) is likely to ask exempted questions, or
  - (b) is likely to countersign applications under section 113 or 115 at the request of bodies or individuals asking exempted questions.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6) A person, other than a body, applying for registration under this section must satisfy the Secretary of State that he is likely to ask exempted questions.

(7) In this section “exempted question” has the same meaning as in section 113.

#### Textual Amendments

**F178** Words in s. 120(2) inserted (E.W.N.I.) (19.6.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 134(3); S.I. 2001/2223, art. 2(1)(c)

**F179** S. 120(3) repealed (29.1.2004 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44), s. 336(3)(4), Sch. 35 para. 6(3), Sch. 37 Pt. 11; S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(p); S.I. 2007/3340, art. 2(b)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C17** This version of this provision extends to England and Wales and Northern Ireland only; a separate version has been created for Scotland only

#### Commencement Information

**I15** S. 120(3) in force for E.W. at 19.3.2001 and s. 120(1)(2)(4)-(7) in force for E.W. at 1.5.2001 by S.I. 2001/1097, art. 2

S. 120(3) in force for S. at 1.1.2002 and s. 120(1)(2)(4)-(7) in force for S. at 1.2.2002 by S.S.I. 2001/482, art. 2

## 120 Registered persons. **S**

(1) For the purposes of this Part a registered person is a person who is listed in a register to be maintained by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this Part.

(2) Subject to <sup>F337</sup>section 120A and] regulations under subsection (3), the Secretary of State shall include in the register any person who applies to him in writing to be registered and satisfies the conditions in subsections (4) to (6).

(3) The Secretary of State may make regulations about the maintenance of the register; and regulations may, in particular, provide for—

(a) the information to be included in the register,

<sup>F338</sup>(aa) the nomination by—

(i) a body corporate or unincorporate; or

(ii) a person appointed to an office by virtue of an enactment,

whether that body or person is registered or applying to be registered, of an individual to act for it or, as the case may be, him in relation to the countersigning of applications under this Part;

(ab) the refusal by the Scottish Ministers, on such grounds as may be specified in or determined under the regulations, to accept or to continue to accept any nomination made by virtue of this subsection;

(ac) as to the period which must elapse before any person refused registration or removed from the register may apply to be included in the register;]

(b) the removal from the register of persons who are, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, no longer likely to wish to countersign applications under section <sup>F339</sup>113A or 113B] , and

(c) the payment of fees.

(4) A person applying for registration under this section must be—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a body corporate or unincorporate,
  - (b) a person appointed to an office by virtue of any enactment, or
  - (c) an individual who employs others in the course of a business.
- (5) A body applying for registration under this section must satisfy the Secretary of State that it—
  - (a) is likely to ask exempted questions, or
  - (b) is likely to countersign applications under section [F340 113A or 113B] at the request of bodies or individuals asking exempted questions.
- (6) A person, other than a body, applying for registration under this section must satisfy the Secretary of State that he is likely to ask exempted questions.
- (7) In this section “exempted question” has the same meaning as in section [F341 113A].

#### Extent Information

- E7** This version of this provision extends to Scotland only; a separate version has been created for England and Wales and Northern Ireland only

#### Textual Amendments

- F337** Words in s. 120(2) inserted (S.) (1.4.2006) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), **ss. 70(6)(a)**, 89(2); [S.S.I. 2006/168](#), **art. 2**
- F338** S. 120(3)(aa)-(ac) inserted (S.) (1.4.2006) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), **ss. 70(6)(b)**, 89(2); [S.S.I. 2006/168](#), **art. 2**
- F339** Words in s. 120(3)(b) substituted (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 6(a)**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(e)**; [S.I. 2007/3341](#), **art. 2(d)**
- F340** Words in s. 120(5)(b) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 6(b)**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(e)**; [S.I. 2006/378](#), **art. 7(c)**; [S.I. 2007/3341](#), **art. 2(d)**
- F341** Word in s. 120(7) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 6(c)**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(e)**; [S.I. 2006/378](#), **art. 7(c)**; [S.I. 2007/3341](#), **art. 2(d)**

#### Commencement Information

- I44** S. 120(3) in force at 19.3.2001 for E.W. and s. 120(1)(2)(4)-(7) in force at 1.5.2001 for E.W. by [S.I. 2001/1097](#), **art. 2**  
S. 120(3) in force at 1.1.2002 for S. and s. 120(1)(2)(4)-(7) in force at 1.2.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2001/482](#), **art. 2**

### [F180] 120A Refusal and cancellation of registration **E+W+N.I.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may refuse to include a person in the register maintained for the purposes of this Part if it appears to him that the registration of that person is likely to make it possible for information to become available to an individual who, in the Secretary of State’s opinion, is not a suitable person to have access to that information.
- (2) The Secretary of State may remove a person from the register if it appears to the Secretary of State—
  - (a) that the registration of that person is likely to make it possible for information to become available to an individual who, in the Secretary of State’s opinion, is not a suitable person to have access to that information; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that the registration of that person has resulted in information becoming known to such an individual.
- <sup>F181</sup>(3) In determining for the purposes of this section whether an individual is a suitable person to have access to any information, the Secretary of State may have regard, in particular, to—
- (a) any information relating to that person which concerns a relevant matter;
  - (b) whether that person is included in any list mentioned in section 113(3A) or (3C) [<sup>F182</sup>or (3EA)] [<sup>F183</sup>or (3EC)]; and
  - (c) any information provided to the Secretary of State under subsection (4).
- (4) It shall be the duty of the chief officer of any police force to comply, as soon as practicable after receiving it, with any request by the Secretary of State to provide the Secretary of State with information which—
- (a) is available to the chief officer;
  - (b) relates to—
    - (i) an applicant for registration;
    - (ii) a registered person; or
    - (iii) an individual who is likely to have access to information in consequence of the countersigning of applications by a particular applicant for registration or by a particular registered person;
- and
- (c) concerns a matter which the Secretary of State has notified to the chief officer to be a matter which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, is relevant to the determination of the suitability of individuals for having access to the information that may be provided in consequence of the countersigning of applications under this Part.
- (5) In this section “relevant matter” has the same meaning as in section 113.]

#### Extent Information

**E2** This version of this provision extends to England and Wales and Northern Ireland only; a separate version has been created for Scotland only

#### Textual Amendments

**F180** S. 120A inserted (E.W.N.I.) (19.6.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 134(1); S.I. 2001/2223, art. 2(1)(c)

**F181** S. 120A(3) applied (13.8.2001) by S.I. 2001/1194, reg. 3A(4) (as inserted by S.I. 2001/2498, reg. 2(3))

**F182** Words in s. 120A(3)(b) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2005) by The Protection of Children and Vulnerable Adults (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/417), arts. 1(3), 17(6); S.R. 2005/104, art. 2

**F183** Words in s. 120A(3)(b) inserted (N.I.) (1.4.2005) by The Protection of Children and Vulnerable Adults (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/417), arts. 1(3), 47(5); S.R. 2005/104, art. 2

#### <sup>F342</sup>120A Refusal and cancellation of registration: Scotland **S**

- (1) The Scottish Ministers may refuse to include a person in, or may remove a person from, a register maintained under section 120 for the purposes of this Part if it appears to them that the registration of that person is likely to make it possible for information to become available to an individual who, in their opinion, is not a suitable person to have access to that information.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) The Scottish Ministers may also remove a person from any such register if it appears to them that the registration of that person has resulted in information becoming known to such an individual.
- (3) In determining, for the purposes of this section, whether an individual is a suitable person to have access to information, the Scottish Ministers may have regard, in particular, to—
- (a) any information relating to the individual which concerns a relevant matter (“relevant matter” having the same meaning as in section <sup>F343</sup>113A);
  - (b) whether that person is included in any list mentioned in section <sup>F344</sup>113C(3) or 113D(3);
  - (c) any information provided to them under subsection (4);
  - (d) any information provided to them by the chief officer of a police force in England and Wales or Northern Ireland in response to a request by them for such information as is available to that officer, relates to any such matter as is mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (4) and concerns such matter as is mentioned in paragraph (c) of that subsection;
  - (e) anything which has been done—
    - (i) under subsection (1) or (2) or section 122(3); or
    - (ii) in England and Wales or Northern Ireland under the provisions of this Act which apply in England and Wales or Northern Ireland and correspond to subsection (1) or (2),and any information on the basis of which that thing was done.
- (4) A chief constable of a police force in Scotland shall comply, as soon as practicable after receiving it, with any request by the Scottish Ministers to provide them with information which—
- (a) is available to him;
  - (b) relates to—
    - (i) an applicant for registration under section 120;
    - (ii) a person so registered;
    - (iii) an individual who is likely to have access to information in consequence of the countersigning of applications by a particular applicant for such registration or by a particular person so registered;and
  - (c) concerns a matter which they have notified the chief constable is a matter which in their opinion is relevant to the determination of the suitability of individuals for having access to information which may be provided by virtue of this Part.
- (5) The Scottish Ministers shall pay to a police authority <sup>F345</sup>such fee as they consider appropriate].
- [ For the purposes of this section references to a police force include any body <sup>F346</sup>(6) mentioned in subsections (10)(a) to (i) and (11) of section 113B and references to a chief officer must be construed accordingly.]
- [ In the case of such a body the reference in subsection (5) to a police authority must be <sup>F347</sup>(7) construed as a reference to such body as is prescribed.]]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Extent Information

- E8** This version of this provision extends to Scotland only; a separate version has been created for England and Wales only

### Textual Amendments

- F342** S. 120A inserted (S.) (1.4.2006) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), **ss. 70(2)**, 89(2); [S.S.I. 2006/168](#), **art. 2**
- F343** Word in s. 120A(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 9(a)**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(e)**
- F344** Words in s. 120A(3)(b) substituted (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 9(b)**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(e)**
- F345** Words in s. 120A(5) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), **ss. 166(1)**, 178(4)(d)(8); [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(c)**
- F346** S. 120A(6) inserted (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), **ss. 165(2)**, 178(4)(d)(8); [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(c)**
- F347** S. 120A(7) inserted (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 9(c)**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), **art. 2(1)(e)**

## <sup>F184</sup>120ZA Regulations about registration

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make further provision about registration.
- (2) Regulations under this section may in particular make provision for—
  - (a) the payment of fees,
  - (b) the information to be included in the register,
  - (c) the registration of any person to be subject to conditions,
  - (d) the nomination by—
    - (i) a body corporate or unincorporate, or
    - (ii) a person appointed to an office by virtue of any enactment,
 of the individuals authorised to act for it or, as the case may be, him in relation to the countersigning of applications under this Part, and
  - (e) the refusal by the Secretary of State, on such grounds as may be specified in or determined under the regulations, to accept or to continue to accept the nomination of a person as so authorised.
- (3) The provision which may be made by virtue of subsection (2)(c) includes provision—
  - (a) for the registration or continued registration of any person to be subject to prescribed conditions or, if the regulations so provide, such conditions as the Secretary of State thinks fit, and
  - (b) for the Secretary of State to vary or revoke those conditions.
- (4) The conditions imposed by virtue of subsection (2)(c) may in particular include conditions—
  - (a) requiring a registered person, before he countersigns an application at an individual's request, to verify the identity of that individual in the prescribed manner,
  - (b) requiring an application under section 113 or 115 to be transmitted by electronic means to the Secretary of State by the registered person who countersigns it, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) requiring a registered person to comply with any code of practice for the time being in force under section 122.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F184** S. 120ZA inserted (29.1.2004 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), [Sch. 35 para. 7](#); S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i); S.I. 2007/3340, art. 2(b)

### 121 Performance by constables on central service in Scotland of functions under this Part.

In Scotland a constable engaged on central service (within the meaning of section 38 of the <sup>M38</sup>Police (Scotland) Act 1967) may perform functions under this Part (other than functions [<sup>F185</sup>under section 114(2), 115(4) or (10), 116(2), 122(1) or (2) or 125]<sup>F185</sup> in relation to the making of regulations or orders) on behalf of the Secretary of State; and without prejudice to the application of subsection (5) of section 119 in respect of any other person performing functions on behalf of the Secretary of State, that subsection shall apply in respect of any constable performing functions by virtue of this section as the subsection applies in respect of the Secretary of State.

#### Textual Amendments

**F185** Words in s. 121 substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), [Sch. 14 para. 10](#); S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c)

#### Commencement Information

**I16** S. 121 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by S.I. 2002/413, [art. 2](#)  
S. 121 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by S.S.I. 2002/124, [art. 4](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M38** 1967 c. 77.

### 122 Code of practice.

- (1) The Secretary of State shall publish, and may from time to time revise, a code of practice in connection with the use of information provided to [<sup>F186</sup>, or the discharge of any function by,] registered persons under this Part.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall lay before Parliament the code of practice under this section as soon as practicable after publication and after revision.
- (3) The Secretary of State may refuse to issue a certificate under section [<sup>F187</sup>113 or 115]<sup>F187</sup>113A or 113B] if he believes that the registered person who countersigned the application—
  - (a) has failed to comply with the code of practice under this section, or
  - (b) countersigned at the request of a body which, or individual who, has failed to comply with the code of practice.

[<sup>F188</sup>(4) Where the Scottish Ministers have reason to believe that—

- (a) a registered person; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a body or individual at whose request a registered person has countersigned or is likely to countersign an application under section [F189 113 or 115][F189 113A or 113B],

has failed to comply with the code of practice, they may remove the registered person from the register or impose conditions on him as respects his continuing to be listed in the register]

#### Textual Amendments

- F186** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (S.) (27.6.2003) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), **ss. 70(7)(a)**, 89(2); [S.S.I. 2003/288](#), art. 2, sch.
- F187** Words in s. 122(3) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 11**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), art. 2(1)(e); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 7(c); [S.I. 2007/3341](#), art. 2(d)
- F188** S. 122(4) added (S.) (27.6.2003) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), **ss. 70(7)(b)**, 89(2); [S.S.I. 2003/288](#), art. 2, sch.
- F189** Words in s. 122(4)(b) substituted (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 11**; [S.S.I. 2006/166](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I17** S. 122(1)(2) in force at 19.3.2001 for E.W. by [S.I. 2001/1097](#), art. 2(1); s. 122(3) in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by [S.I. 2002/413](#), **art. 2**
- S. 122(1)(2) in force at 1.1.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2001/482](#), art. 2(1); s. 122(3) in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), **art. 4**

### [F190 122A] Delegation of functions of Secretary of State

- (1) The Secretary of State may, to such extent and subject to such conditions as he thinks fit, delegate any relevant function of his under this Part to such person as he may determine.
- (2) A function is relevant for the purposes of subsection (1) if it does not consist of a power—
- (a) to make regulations, or
  - (b) to publish or revise a code of practice or to lay any such code before Parliament.
- (3) A delegation under subsection (1) may be varied or revoked at any time.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F190** S. 122A inserted (29.1.2004 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), **Sch. 35 para. 10**; [S.I. 2004/81](#), art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i); [S.I. 2007/3340](#), art. 2(b)

### 123 Offences: falsification, &c.

- (1) A person commits an offence if, with intent to deceive, he—
- (a) makes a false certificate under this Part,
  - (b) alters a certificate under this Part,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) uses a certificate under this Part which relates to another person in a way which suggests that it relates to himself, or
  - (d) allows a certificate under this Part which relates to him to be used by another person in a way which suggests that it relates to that other person.
- (2) A person commits an offence if he knowingly makes a false statement for the purpose of obtaining, or enabling another person to obtain, a certificate under this Part.
- (3) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, or to both.

#### Commencement Information

- I18** S. 123 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by S.I. 2002/413, art. 2  
S. 123 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by S.S.I. 2002/124, art. 4

#### 124 Offences: disclosure.

- (1) A member, officer or employee of a body registered under section 120 commits an offence if he discloses information provided following an application under section [F191 113 or 115][F191 113A or 113B] unless he discloses it, in the course of his duties,—
- (a) to another member, officer or employee of the registered body,
  - (b) to a member, officer or employee of a body at the request of which the registered body countersigned the application, or
  - (c) to an individual at whose request the registered body countersigned the relevant application.
- (2) Where information is provided under section [F192 113 or 115][F192 113A or 113B] following an application countersigned at the request of a body which is not registered under section 120, a member, officer or employee of the body commits an offence if he discloses the information unless he discloses it, in the course of his duties, to another member, officer or employee of that body.
- (3) Where information is provided under section [F193 113 or 115][F193 113A or 113B] following an application countersigned by or at the request of an individual—
- (a) the individual commits an offence if he discloses the information unless he discloses it to an employee of his for the purpose of the employee's duties, and
  - (b) an employee of the individual commits an offence if he discloses the information unless he discloses it, in the course of his duties, to another employee of the individual.
- (4) Where information provided under section [F194 113 or 115][F194 113A or 113B] is disclosed to a person and the disclosure—
- (a) is an offence under this section, or
  - (b) would be an offence under this section but for subsection (5) or (6)(a), (d), (e) or (f),
- the person to whom the information is disclosed commits an offence (subject to subsections (5) and (6)) if he discloses it to any other person.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Subsections (1) to (4) do not apply to a disclosure of information provided in accordance with section [F195115(8)][F195113B(5)] which is made with the written consent of the chief officer who provided the information.
- (6) Subsections (1) to (4) do not apply to a disclosure of information contained in a certificate under section [F196113 or 115][F196113A or 113B] which is made—
- (a) with the written consent of the applicant for the certificate, or
  - (b) to a government department, or
  - (c) to a person appointed to an office by virtue of any enactment, or
  - (d) in accordance with an obligation to provide information under or by virtue of any enactment, or
  - (e) for the purposes of answering an exempted question (within the meaning of section [F197113][F197113A]) of a kind specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State, or
  - (f) for some other purpose specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (7) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale, or to both.

#### Textual Amendments

- F191** Words in s. 124(1) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 12(a)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2007/3341, art. 2(d)
- F192** Words in s. 124(2) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 12(a)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2007/3341, art. 2(d)
- F193** Words in s. 124(3) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 12(a)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2007/3341, art. 2(d)
- F194** Words in s. 124(4) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 12(a)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2007/3341, art. 2(d)
- F195** Word in s. 124(5) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 12(b)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2007/3341, art. 2(d)
- F196** Words in s. 124(6) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 12(a)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2007/3341, art. 2(d)
- F197** Word in s. 124(6)(e) substituted (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)**, s. 178(4)(e)(8), **Sch. 14 para. 12(c)**; S.S.I. 2006/166, art. 2(1)(e); S.I. 2006/378, art. 7(c); S.I. 2007/3341, art. 2(d)

#### Commencement Information

- I19** S. 124 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by S.I. 2002/413, **art. 2**  
S. 124 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by S.S.I. 2002/124, **art. 4**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F198</sup> **124A Further offences: disclosure of information obtained in connection with delegated function** **E+W+N.I.**

- (1) Any person who is engaged in the discharge of functions conferred by this Part on the Secretary of State commits an offence if he discloses information which has been obtained by him in connection with those functions and which relates to a particular person unless he discloses the information, in the course of his duties,—
  - (a) to another person engaged in the discharge of those functions,
  - (b) to the chief officer of a police force in connection with a request under this Part to provide information to the Secretary of State, or
  - (c) to an applicant or registered person who is entitled under this Part to the information disclosed to him.
- (2) Where information is disclosed to a person and the disclosure—
  - (a) is an offence under subsection (1), or
  - (b) would be an offence under subsection (1) but for subsection (3)(a), (d) or (e),the person to whom the information is disclosed commits an offence if he discloses it to any other person.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not apply to a disclosure of information which is made—
  - (a) with the written consent of the person to whom the information relates,
  - (b) to a government department,
  - (c) to a person appointed to an office by virtue of any enactment,
  - (d) in accordance with an obligation to provide information under or by virtue of any enactment, or
  - (e) for some other purpose specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (4) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 51 weeks or to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale, or to both.
- (5) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 281(5) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003, the reference in subsection (4) to 51 weeks is to be read as a reference to 6 months.]

**Extent Information**

**E3** This version of this provision extends to England and Wales and Northern Ireland only; a separate version has been created for Scotland only

**Textual Amendments**

**F198** S. 124A inserted (29.1.2004 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), [Sch. 35 para. 11](#); S.I. 2004/81, art. 4(1)(2)(o)(i); S.I. 2007/3340, art. 2(b)

[<sup>F199</sup> **124A Review of certain decisions as to registration** **S**

- (1) Where the Scottish Ministers decide to refuse to include a person in the register maintained for the purposes of this Part or, other than by virtue of section 120(3)(b), to remove him from that register they shall notify him in writing of that decision and of their reason for so deciding and shall send a copy of that notification to the Secretary of State.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) If the person considers that the information upon which the decision was based may have been inaccurate he may, by written notice to the Scottish Ministers setting out his reason for so considering, require them to review the decision; and they shall notify him in writing of the results of their review and of any consequential change in the decision and shall send a copy of—
  - (a) the notice; and
  - (b) the notification,
 to the Secretary of State.
- (3) Any notification given by the Scottish Ministers under subsection (1) or (2) shall include information as to the provisions of any regulations made under section 120(3) (ac).
- (4) The Scottish Ministers may, for the purposes of this section, make regulations as to procedure; and such regulations may, in particular, make provision in relation to—
  - (a) information to be included in any notification under subsection (1) or (2); and
  - (b) the period within which—
    - (i) a requirement may be made under subsection (2); or
    - (ii) a decision under subsection (1) is to be implemented.]

#### Extent Information

**E9** This version of this provision extends to Scotland only; a separate version has been created for England and Wales only

#### Textual Amendments

**F199** Ss. 124A, 124B inserted (S.) (1.4.2006 for the insertion of s. 124A) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), ss. **70(8)**, 89(2); S.S.I. 2006/168, art. 2

### [<sup>F199</sup>124B] Scottish annotated list of certificated persons

- (1) The Scottish Ministers shall maintain an annotated list for the purposes of this Part and shall include in that list all persons to whom a criminal record certificate, or as the case may be an enhanced criminal record certificate, has been issued under any of sections 113 to 116 of this Act.
- (2) The Scottish Ministers may make regulations about the maintenance of the list; and such regulations may, in particular, provide for—
  - (a) the information to be included in the list;
  - (b) the details to be provided, for the purposes of this section, by persons applying to be issued a criminal record certificate or enhanced criminal record certificate or countersigning any such application;
  - (c) the procedure to be followed as respects the exercise of such discretion as is afforded them by subsection (3).
- (3) The Scottish Ministers may, as respects a person included in the list, if they are satisfied that it is appropriate to do so, notify the registered person who countersigned his application for the certificate in question (or on whose behalf that application was countersigned) or whomever else made the requisite statement which accompanied that application, about any relevant matter relating to the listed person (“relevant

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

matter” having the same meaning as in section 113(5)) of which they become aware after issuing that certificate.

- (4) The Scottish Ministers are not to be satisfied as is mentioned in subsection (3) unless they are satisfied that the exempted question for the purpose of which the certificate was required remains relevant for the person to whom notification would, under that subsection, be given.
- (5) Regulations under paragraph (c) of subsection (2)—
  - (a) shall provide for there to be an opportunity for a listed person to make representations as respects whether the Scottish Ministers should be satisfied as is mentioned in subsection (3) and require them to have regard to those representations before giving notification under that subsection; and
  - (b) may require the person who would receive that notification (not being a person who is a Minister of the Crown) to provide them with such information as is in his possession and to which it would be appropriate for them to have regard as respects the exercise of the discretion mentioned in that paragraph.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F199** Ss. 124A, 124B inserted (S.) (1.4.2006 for the insertion of s. 124A) by [Criminal Justice \(Scotland\) Act 2003 \(asp 7\)](#), **ss. 70(8)**, 89(2); S.S.I. 2006/168, art. 2

## 125 Regulations.

- (1) Anything authorised or required by any provision of this Part to be prescribed shall be prescribed by regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Regulations under this Part shall be made by statutory instrument.
- (3) [<sup>F200</sup>A statutory instrument which contains (whether alone or with other provisions) regulations made by virtue of section 115(4) shall not be made unless a draft has been laid before, and approved by resolution of, each House of Parliament.]
- (4) A statutory instrument [<sup>F201</sup>to which subsection (3) does not apply] shall be subject to annulment pursuant to a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (5) Regulations under this Part may make different provision for different cases.
- [<sup>F202</sup>(6) If the power mentioned in subsection (1) is exercised by the Scottish Ministers, the reference in subsection (3) to each House of Parliament must be construed as a reference to the Scottish Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F200** S. 125(3) repealed (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.S.I. 2006/166, **art. 2(1)(d)**; and repealed (6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), **Sch. 35 para. 12(a)**, **Sch. 37 Pt. 11**; S.I. 2006/751, **art. 2(c)(d)(i)(ii)**; S.I. 2007/3340, **art. 2(b)**

**F201** Words in s. 125(4) repealed (1.4.2006 for S.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.S.I. 2006/166, **art. 2(1)(d)**; and repealed (6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\)](#), s. 336(3)(4), **Sch. 35 para. 12(b)**, **Sch. 37 Pt. 11**; S.I. 2006/751, **art. 2(c)(d)(i)(ii)**; S.I. 2007/3340, **art. 2(b)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F202** S. 125(6) added (1.4.2006 for S., 6.4.2006 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(4)(e)(8), [Sch. 14 para. 14](#); [S.S.I. 2006/166](#), art. 2(1)(e); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 7(c); [S.I. 2007/3341](#), art. 2(d)

#### Commencement Information

**I20** S. 125 in force at 19.3.2001 for E.W. by [S.I. 2001/1097](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)  
S. 125 in force at 1.1.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2001/482](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

## 126 Interpretation of Part V.

(1) In this Part—

“caution” means a caution given to a person in England and Wales or Northern Ireland in respect of an offence which, at the time when the caution is given, he has admitted;

“certificate” means any one or more documents issued in response to a particular application;

“chief officer” means—

- (i) a chief officer of police of a police force in England and Wales,
- (ii) a chief constable of a police force in Scotland, and
- (iii) the Chief Constable of the [<sup>F203</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland];

“government department” includes a Northern Ireland department;

“Minister of the Crown” includes a Northern Ireland department;

“police authority” means—

- (i) a police authority for an area in Great Britain or a joint police board (within the meaning of the <sup>M39</sup>Police (Scotland) Act 1967), and
- (ii) the [<sup>F204</sup>Northern Ireland Policing Board];

“police force” means—

- (i) a police force in Great Britain, and
- (ii) the [<sup>F203</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland] and the [<sup>F203</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland Reserve];

“prescribed” shall be construed in accordance with section 125(1).

(2) In the application of this Part to Northern Ireland, a reference to the <sup>M40</sup>Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974, or to a provision of that Act, shall be construed as a reference to the <sup>M41</sup>Rehabilitation of Offenders (Northern Ireland) Order 1978 or, as the case may be, to the corresponding provision of that order.

[<sup>F205</sup>(3) In the application of this Part to Scotland references to the Secretary of State must be construed as references to the Scottish Ministers.

(4) Subsection (3) does not apply to section 118(2A)(d) or 124A(1) and (2).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F203** Words in s. 126(1) substituted (4.11.2001) by [2000 c. 32](#), s. 78(1), [Sch. 6 para. 20\(2\)\(a\)\(b\)](#); [S.R. 2001/396](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)

**F204** Words in s. 126(1) substituted (4.11.2001) by [2000 c. 32](#), s. 78(1), [Sch. 6 para. 20\(3\)](#); [S.R. 2001/396](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F205** S. 126(3)(4) inserted (1.7.2005 for S., 1.7.2005 for E.W., 3.12.2007 for N.I.) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), [ss. 166\(2\)](#), [178\(4\)\(d\)\(8\)](#); [S.S.I. 2005/358](#), [art. 2\(d\)](#); [S.I. 2005/1521](#), [art. 3\(3\)\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2007/3341](#), [art. 2\(c\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I21** S. 126 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by [S.I. 2002/413](#), [art. 2](#)  
S. 126 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), [art. 4](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M39** 1967 c. 77.  
**M40** 1974 c. 53.  
**M41** [S.I. 1978/1908 \(N.I. 27\)](#).

### 127 Saving: disclosure of information and records.

Nothing in sections 112 to 119 shall be taken to prejudice any power which exists apart from this Act to disclose information or to make records available.

#### Commencement Information

**I22** S. 127 in force at 1.3.2002 for E.W. by [S.I. 2002/413](#), [art. 2](#)  
S. 127 in force at 25.4.2002 for S. by [S.S.I. 2002/124](#), [art. 4](#)

## PART VI

### MISCELLANEOUS

#### *Amendments of Police Act 1996*

### 128 Regulations for special constables and police cadets.

(1) In section 51 of the <sup>M42</sup>Police Act 1996 (regulations for special constables), after subsection (3) there shall be inserted—

“(3A) In relation to any matter as to which provision may be made by regulations under this section, the regulations may—

- (a) authorise or require provision to be made by, or confer discretionary powers on, the Secretary of State, police authorities, chief officers of police or other persons, or
- (b) authorise or require the delegation by any person of functions conferred on that person by or under the regulations.”.

(2) In section 52 of that Act (regulations for police cadets) after subsection (1) there shall be inserted—

“(1A) In relation to any matter as to which provision may be made by regulations under this section, the regulations may—

- (a) authorise or require provision to be made by, or confer discretionary powers on, the Secretary of State, police authorities, chief officers of police or other persons, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) authorise or require the delegation by any person of functions conferred on that person by or under the regulations.”.

**Marginal Citations**

M42 1996 c. 16.

**129 Change of name or description of certain police areas.**

In Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (police areas for England and Wales except London)—

- (a) in the entry in the first column for “Humberside” there shall be substituted “ Humber ”;
- (b) in the entry in the second column opposite the name of the Dyfed Powys police area for “Cardiganshire” there shall be substituted “ Ceredigion ”;
- (c) for the entry in that column opposite the name of the North Wales police area there shall be substituted—

“The counties of the Isle of Anglesey, Gwynedd, Denbighshire and Flintshire and the county boroughs of Conwy and Wrexham.”;

- (d) in the entry in that column opposite the name of the South Wales police area for “Neath and Port Talbot” there shall be substituted “ Neath Port Talbot ”.

**Commencement Information**

I23 S. 129 partly in force; S. 129 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; s.129(b)(c) and (d) in force (25.6.1997) by S.I. 1997/1377, art. 2

*Amendments of Police Act (Northern Ireland) 1970*

F206 **130** .....

**Textual Amendments**

F206 S. 130 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 32, ss. 74(2)(3), Sch. 6 (with Sch. 5 para. 1); S.R. 1999/176, art. 3

F207 **131** .....

**Textual Amendments**

F207 S. 131 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 32, ss. 74(2)(3), Sch. 6 (with Sch. 5 para. 1); S.R. 1999/176, art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F208 132 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F208 S. 132 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 32, ss. 74(2)(3), Sch. 6 (with Sch. 5 para. 1); S.R. 1999/176, art. 3

PROSPECTIVE

*Rehabilitation of Offenders*

**133 Rehabilitation of Offenders.**

The following provisions (which restrict the effect of the <sup>M43</sup>Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 and the <sup>M44</sup>Rehabilitation of Offenders (Northern Ireland) Order 1978) shall cease to have effect—

- (a) section 189 of, and Schedule 14 to, the <sup>M45</sup>Financial Services Act 1986;
- (b) section 95 of the <sup>M46</sup>Banking Act 1987;
- (c) section 39 of the <sup>M47</sup>Osteopaths Act 1993;
- (d) section 19 of the <sup>M48</sup>National Lottery etc. Act 1993;
- (e) section 40 of the <sup>M49</sup>Chiropractors Act 1994.

**Marginal Citations**

- M43 1974 c. 53.
- M44 S.I. 1978/1908 (N.I. 27).
- M45 1986 c. 60.
- M46 1987 c. 22.
- M47 1993 c. 21.
- M48 1993 c. 39.
- M49 1994 c. 17.

**PART VII**

GENERAL

[<sup>F209</sup>133A Meaning of “prevention” and “detection”.

Section 81(5) of the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 (meaning of “prevention” and “detection”) shall apply for the purposes of this Act as it applies for the purposes of the provisions of that Act not contained in Chapter I of Part I.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F209** S. 133A inserted (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, s. 82(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(13)** (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, **art. 2**

### 134 Amendments and repeals.

- (1) Schedule 9 (minor and consequential amendments) shall have effect.
- (2) The enactments mentioned in Schedule 10 are hereby repealed to the extent specified in the third column of that Schedule.

#### Commencement Information

**I24** S. 134 partly in force; s. 134 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135(1); s. 134 in force for certain purposes at: 23.7.1997 by S.I. 1997/1377, art. 4(2)(o); 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, art. 2(2)(w); 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, art. 2 (with arts. 3-7 (of which arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, art. 7)); 1.4.1998 by S.I. 1998/354, art. 2; 1.3.2002 for E.W. by S.I. 2002/413, **art. 2**

### 135 Commencement.

- (1) The preceding provisions of this Act shall come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order made by statutory instrument appoint.
- (2) An order under this section may—
  - (a) appoint different days for different purposes or different areas, and
  - (b) make transitional provision and savings (including provision modifying this Act).
- (3) An order under this section may, in relation to Part I, II or IV make provision—
  - (a) for the transfer and apportionment of property and for the transfer, apportionment and creation of rights and liabilities;
  - (b) for the transfer of members of police forces in Great Britain, members of the <sup>F210</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland] and other persons;
  - (c) for the Secretary of State, or any other person nominated by or in accordance with the order, to determine any matter requiring determination under or in consequence of the order;
  - (d) as to the payment of fees charged, or expenses incurred, by any person nominated to determine any matter by virtue of paragraph (c).
- (4) Any day appointed by an order under this section for the coming into force of section 93, 94 or 95 of this Act shall not be earlier than the day on which a code of practice issued under section 101 comes into operation.
- (5) A statutory instrument containing provisions made by virtue of subsection (2)(b) or (3) shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

#### Subordinate Legislation Made

**P1** S. 135 power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1997/1377

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- S. 135 power partly exercised: 22.2.1999 appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1999/151, **art. 2**
- S. 135 power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.S.I. 2001/482, **art. 2**
- S. 135 power partly exercised: 1.3.2002 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2002/413}, art. 2
- P2** S. 135(1)(2)(a) power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions by {S.S.I. 2002/124}, arts. 3-5

#### Textual Amendments

- F210** Words in s. 135(3)(b) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), **Sch. 6 para. 20(2)(b)**; S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, **Sch.**

### 136 Police: co-operation on implementation.

It shall be the duty of police authorities for areas in Great Britain, and the [<sup>F211</sup>Northern Ireland Policing Board], and their staff to co-operate with each other, and generally to exercise their functions, so as to facilitate the implementation of Parts I and II of this Act and any transfer of property or staff made by an order under section 135.

#### Textual Amendments

- F211** Words in s. 136 substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), **Sch. 6 para. 20(3)**; S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, **Sch.**

### 137 Extent.

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) to (4), this Act extends throughout the United Kingdom.
- (2) The following provisions of this Act extend to England and Wales only—
- (a) Part II;
  - <sup>F212</sup>(b) .....
  - <sup>F213</sup>(c) .....
  - <sup>F214</sup>(d) .....
  - (e) sections 128 and 129.
- <sup>F215</sup>(3) .....
- (4) The amendments in Schedules 6 and 9, and the repeals in Schedule 10, have the same extent as the enactments to which they refer.

#### Textual Amendments

- F212** S. 137(2)(b) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 105, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)
- F213** S. 137(2)(c) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 105, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)
- F214** S. 137(2)(d) repealed (1.8.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, **Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1)**; S.I. 2001/2223, **art. 3(j)(I)(ii)**
- F215** S. 137(3) repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 32, ss. 74(2)(3), **Sch. 6** (with Sch. 5 para. 1); S.R. 1999/176, **art. 3**

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**138 Short title.**

This Act may be cited as the Police Act 1997.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULES

### <sup>F216</sup> SCHEDULE 1

Sections 1(7) and 47(7).

#### Textual Amendments

**F216** Schs. 1-2A repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 106, **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. paras. 10, 13(dd)

### <sup>F216</sup> SCHEDULE 2

Sections 1(7) and 47(7).

### <sup>F216</sup> SCHEDULE 2A

#### FURTHER PROVISIONS ABOUT SERVICE AUTHORITIES

##### *Powers*

1 .....

##### *Committees*

2 .....

##### *Proceedings*

3 .....

PROSPECTIVE

<sup>F216</sup>4 .....

##### *Arrangements for discharge of functions by Service Authorities*

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

8 .....

*Interpretation*

9 .....

<sup>F217</sup>SCHEDULE 3

Section 17(6).

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F217** Sch. 3 (paras. 1-5) repealed (1.8.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2001/2223, art. 3(j)(i)(ii)

<sup>F222</sup>SCHEDULE 4

Section 44(1).

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F222** Sch. 4 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

<sup>F223</sup>SCHEDULE 5

Section 62(6).

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F223** Sch. 5 (paras. 1-5) repealed (1.8.2001) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2001/2323, art. 3(l)(ii)

SCHEDULE 6

Section 88.

APPLICATION TO NCS SERVICE AUTHORITY OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT ENACTMENTS

*Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)*

1 <sup>F228</sup> .....



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F228** Sch. 6 para. 1 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4); and that same provision expressed to be repealed by 2000 c. 22, ss. 107(2), 108(3)(c)(vii), Sch. 6

2 **F229** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F229** Sch. 6 para. 2 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4); and that same provision expressed to be repealed by 2000 c. 22, ss. 107(2), 108(3)(c)(vii), Sch. 6

3 **F230** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F230** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

4 **F231** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F231** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

- 5 (1) Section 107 (application to police authorities of provisions relating to the discharge of functions by local authorities) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (7) for “(a) and (b)” there shall be substituted “ (a), (aa) and (b) ”.
- (3) **F232** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F232** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

- 6 (1) Section 146A (application to police authorities of miscellaneous powers of local authorities) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for “subsection (1A)” there shall be substituted “ subsections (1A) and (1AA) ”, and
  - (b) for “shall be” there shall be substituted “ and the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad shall each be ”.
- (3) In subsection (1A)—
- (a) for “A” there shall be substituted “ Neither a ”,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) F233 .....
- (c) the word “not” shall be omitted.

(4) F233 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F233** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

**Commencement Information**

**I25** Sch. 6 para. 6 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 6 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135; Sch. 6 para. 6 in force at 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, art. 2 (with arts. 3-7 (of which arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, art. 7))

7 In section 223 (appearance of local authorities in legal proceedings), in subsection (2), after “1996” there shall be inserted “ and the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad ”.

8 F234 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F234** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

9 F235 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F235** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

10 F236 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F236** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Local Government Act 1974 (c. 7)*

11 F237 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F237** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976 (c. 57)*

12 F238 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F238** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

13 F239 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F239** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980 (c. 65)*

14 F240 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F240** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

15 F241 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F241** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

16 F242 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F242** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1982 (c. 30)*

17 F243 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F243** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

18 F244 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F244** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Local Government Finance Act 1982 (c. 32)*

F245<sup>19</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F245** Sch. 6 para. 19 repealed (11.9.1998 for E.W., 1.4.2002 otherwise) by 1998 c. 18, ss. 54(3), 55(2), Sch. 5 and 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

F246<sup>20</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F246** Sch. 6 para. 20 repealed (11.9.1998 for E.W., 1.4.2002 otherwise) by 1998 c. 18, ss. 54(3), 55(2), Sch. 5 and 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

F247<sup>21</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F247** Sch. 6 para. 21 repealed (11.9.1998 for E.W., 1.4.2002 otherwise) by 1998 c. 18, ss. 54(3), 55(2), Sch. 5 and 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

F248<sup>22</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F248** Sch. 6 para. 22 repealed (11.9.1998 for E.W., 1.4.2002 otherwise) by 1998 c. 18, ss. 54(3), 55(2), Sch. 5 and 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Local Government Act 1986 (c. 10)*

23 F249 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F249** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

24 F250 .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F250** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

PROSPECTIVE

*Local Government Act 1988 (c. 9)*

25 **F251** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F251** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

26 **F252** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F252** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Local Government Finance Act 1988 (c. 41)*

27 **F253** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F253** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

28 **F254** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F254** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c. 42)*

29 In section 21 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989, in subsection (1) (definition of local authority for purposes of various provisions relating to their members, officers, staff and committees etc.), in paragraph (g), after “1996” there shall be inserted “ or the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Commencement Information**

**I26** Sch. 6 para. 29 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 6 para. 29 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135; Sch. 6 para. 29 in force at 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, art. 2 (with arts. 3-7 (of which arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, art. 7))

30 <sup>F255</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F255** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

31 <sup>F256</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F256** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

32 <sup>F257</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F257** Sch. 6 (other than paras. 5(1)(2), 6(1)(2)(3)(a)(c), 7, 29) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

<sup>F258</sup>SCHEDULE 7

**Textual Amendments**

**F258** Sch. 7 repealed (25.9.2000) by 2000 c. 23, ss. 70(2)(c), 82(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 82(3)); S.I. 2000/2543, art. 2 (and by art. 6(1) of that S.I. the repeal is expressed to be brought into force at 2.10.2000 subject to the provisions of art. 6(2)-(5))

SCHEDULE 8

Section 109(2).

THE POLICE INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY ORGANISATION

*Constitution*

1 (1) [<sup>F260</sup>Subject to sub-paragraph (2A)]The Police Information Technology Organisation (“the Organisation”) shall consist of a chairman and other members appointed by the

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Secretary of State [<sup>F260</sup>or, where so provided in sub-paragraph (3) below, the Scottish Ministers].

- (2) Before appointing the chairman the Secretary of State shall consult—
- (a) persons whom he considers to represent the interests of police authorities, and
  - (b) persons whom he considers to represent the interests of chief officers of police.

[<sup>F261</sup>(2A) Before appointing the Chairman the Secretary of State shall consult the Scottish Ministers.]

- (3) The members apart from the chairman at any time shall include—
- (a) at least three members nominated by persons whom the Secretary of State considers to represent police authorities for areas in England and Wales;
  - (b) at least three members nominated by persons whom the Secretary of State considers to represent chief officers of police of police forces in England and Wales;
  - (c) at least one member nominated by persons whom the [<sup>F262</sup>Scottish Ministers]considers to represent police authorities for areas in Scotland;
  - (d) at least one member nominated by persons whom the [<sup>F262</sup>Scottish Ministers]considers to represent the interests of chief constables of police forces in Scotland;
  - (e) at least one member nominated by the [<sup>F263</sup>Northern Ireland Policing Board];
  - (f) at least one member nominated by the Chief Constable of the [<sup>F264</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland]; and
  - [<sup>F265</sup>(g) at least three other members of whom—
    - (i) at least one shall be appointed by the Secretary of State;
    - (ii) at least one shall be appointed by the Secretary of State after consultation with the Scottish Ministers; and
    - (iii) at least one shall be appointed by the Scottish Ministers.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F260** Words in Sch. 8 para. 1(1) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(4)(a)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F261** Sch. 8 para. 1(2A) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(4)(b)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F262** Words in Sch. 8 para. 1(3)(c)(d) substituted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(4)(c)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**
- F263** Words in Sch. 8 para. 1(3)(e) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), **Sch. 6 para. 20(3)**; S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, **Sch.**
- F264** Words in Sch. 8 para. 1(3)(f) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), **Sch. 6 para. 20(2)(b)**; S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, **Sch.**
- F265** Sch. 8 para. 1(3)(g) substituted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(4)(c)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C18** Sch. 8 para. 1(2) amended (1.9.1997) by S.I. 1997/1930, **art. 2**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I27** Sch. 8 partly in force; Sch 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135; Sch. 8 para. 1 (1)(2)and(3)(a)-(d) and (g) in force at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930 art. 2

### Members

- 2 (1) Subject to the provisions of this Schedule, a member of the Organisation shall hold office in accordance with the terms of his appointment.
- (2) A member shall not be appointed for more than five years at a time.
- (3) A person may at any time resign as a member or as chairman by notice in writing to the Secretary of State.
- (4) <sup>F266</sup>Subject to sub-paragraphs (4A) and (4B),]the Secretary of State may remove a person from office as a member or as chairman if satisfied that—
- (a) he has without reasonable excuse failed to discharge his functions for a continuous period of three months;
  - (b) he has without reasonable excuse been absent from three consecutive meetings of the Organisation;
  - (c) he has been convicted of a criminal offence;
  - (d) he has become bankrupt, his estate has been sequestrated or he has made an arrangement with or granted a trust deed for his creditors;
  - (e) he has failed to comply with the terms of his appointment; or
  - (f) he is otherwise unable or unfit to discharge his functions.
- <sup>F267</sup>(4A) Before removing a person from office as chairman, the Secretary of State shall consult the Scottish Ministers.
- <sup>F267</sup>(4B) The Scottish Ministers shall, instead of the Secretary of State, exercise the power of removal from office as a member under sub-paragraph (4) in respect of any person who was appointed by them.]
- (5) The Secretary of State shall not remove from office a member nominated by persons representing certain interests in accordance with paragraph <sup>F268</sup>1(3)(a) and (b)]unless he has first consulted persons whom he considers to represent those interests.
- <sup>F269</sup>(5) The Scottish Ministers shall not remove from office a member nominated by persons representing certain interests in accordance with paragraph 1(3)(c) and (d) unless they have first consulted persons whom they consider to represent those interests.]
- (6) The Secretary of State shall not remove from office a member nominated in accordance with paragraph 1(3)(e) or (f) unless he has first consulted the <sup>F270</sup>Northern Ireland Policing Board] or, as the case may be, the Chief Constable of the <sup>F271</sup>Police Service of Northern Ireland].

### Textual Amendments

**F266** Words in Sch. 8 para. 2(4) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(5)(a); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

**F267** Sch. 8 para. 2(4A)(4B) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(5)(b); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F268** Words in Sch. 8 para. 2(5)(c) substituted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(5)(c); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

**F269** By S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(5)(d) (1.7.1999) it is provided that after Sch. 8 para. (5) there is inserted sub-paragraph (5); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

**F270** Words in Sch. 8 para. 2(6) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), Sch. 6 para. 20(3); S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, Sch.

**F271** Words in Sch. 8 para. 2(6) substituted (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(1), Sch. 6 para. 20(2)(b); S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, Sch.

#### Commencement Information

**I28** Sch. 8 partly in force; Sch. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135; Sch. 8 para. 2(1)-(5) in force at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, art. 2

- 3
- (1) The Organisation shall pay to its members such remuneration and allowances as the Secretary of State may determine.
  - (2) The Organisation shall, as regards any member or former member in whose case the Secretary of State may so determine, pay or make payments in respect of such pension or gratuity as the Secretary of State may determine.
  - (3) If a person ceases to be a member, or ceases to be chairman, and it appears to the Secretary of State that there are special circumstances which make it right that he should receive compensation, the Secretary of State may direct the Organisation to make a payment of such amount as he may determine.

#### *Staff, &c.*

- 4
- (1) The Organisation shall not appoint employees except with the approval of the Secretary of State as to numbers and as to terms and conditions of service.
  - (2) No person shall be appointed to act as the chief executive of the Organisation unless the Secretary of State [<sup>F272</sup>after consultation with the Scottish Ministers,] has consented to the appointment.

#### Textual Amendments

**F272** Words in Sch. 8 para. 4(2) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(6); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

- 5
- (1) The Organisation shall pay to its employees such remuneration and allowances as it may, with the consent of the Secretary of State, determine.
  - (2) The Organisation shall—
    - (a) pay, or make payments in respect of, such pensions or gratuities to or in respect of employees or former employees as it may, with the consent of the Secretary of State, determine;
    - (b) provide and maintain such schemes (whether contributory or not) as it may determine, with the consent of the Secretary of State, for the payment of pensions or gratuities in respect of employees or former employees.
  - (3) References in this paragraph to pensions and gratuities include references to pensions or gratuities by way of compensation to or in respect of employees who suffer loss of employment or loss or diminution of emoluments.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) If any person—
- (a) on ceasing to be employed by the Organisation, becomes or continues to be one of its members, and
  - (b) was, by reference to his employment, a participant in a pension scheme maintained by the Organisation,
- the Organisation may, with the consent of the Secretary of State, make provision for that person to continue to participate in that scheme, on such terms and conditions as it may with the consent of the Secretary of State determine, as if his service as a member were service as an employee; and any such provision shall be without prejudice to paragraph 3.
- 6 (1) Employment with the Organisation shall be included among the kinds of employment to which a scheme under section 1 of the <sup>M51</sup>Superannuation Act 1972 can apply.
- (2) The Organisation shall pay to the Minister for the Civil Service, at such times as he may direct, such sums as he may determine in respect of the increase attributable to sub-paragraph (1) in the sums payable out of money provided by Parliament under that Act.
- (3) Where an employee of the Organisation is, by reference to that employment, a participant in a scheme under section 1 of that Act and is also a member of the Organisation, the Minister for the Civil Service may determine that his service as a member shall be treated for the purposes of the scheme as service as an employee (whether or not any benefits are payable to or in respect of him by virtue of paragraph 3 above).

#### Marginal Citations

**M51** 1972 c. 11.

- 7 (1) The Organisation shall be liable in respect of [<sup>F273</sup>any unlawful conduct of] a member of a police force engaged on service with the Organisation in the performance or purported performance of his functions in like manner as a master is liable in respect of [<sup>F274</sup>any unlawful conduct of] his servants in the course of their employment, and shall [<sup>F275</sup>, in the case of a tort,] be treated for all purposes as a joint tortfeasor.
- (2) In relation to Scotland, sub-paragraph (1) shall not apply but the Organisation shall be liable in reparation in respect of a wrongful act or omission on the part of a member of a police force engaged on service with the Organisation in the performance or purported performance of his functions in like manner as a master is so liable in respect of any wrongful act or omission on the part of his servant in the course of the servant's employment.

#### Textual Amendments

**F273** Words in Sch. 8 para. 7(1) substituted (1.10.2002) by [Police Reform Act 2002 \(c. 30\), s. 102\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2002/2306, [art. 2\(f\)\(xi\)](#)

**F274** Words in Sch. 8 para. 7(1) substituted (1.10.2002) by [Police Reform Act 2002 \(c. 30\), s. 102\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2002/2306, [art. 2\(f\)\(xi\)](#)

**F275** Words in Sch. 8 para. 7(1) substituted (1.10.2002) by [Police Reform Act 2002 \(c. 30\), s. 102\(3\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2002/2306, [art. 2\(f\)\(xi\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C19** Sch. 8 para. 7(1) excluded by 1974 c. 37, s. 51A(2D)(2E)(d) (as inserted (E.W.S.) (7.4.2005) by **Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), ss. 158(1), 178(1)(a)** (with s. 158(5)-(7)))

#### Committees

- 8 (1) No person who is not a member of the Organisation shall be appointed to a committee or sub-committee of the Organisation unless the Secretary of State [<sup>F276</sup>, after consultation with the Scottish Ministers,] has consented to the appointment.
- (2) Remuneration and allowances paid to members of committees and sub-committees of the Organisation who are not members of the Organisation shall be of such amounts as the Secretary of State may determine.

#### Textual Amendments

- F276** Words in Sch. 8 para. 8(2) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(7)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**

#### Commencement Information

- I29** Sch. 8 para. 8 wholly in force at 1.4.1998; Sch. 8 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 8 para. 8(1) in force at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, **art. 2**; Sch. 8 para. 8 otherwise in force at 1.4.1998 by S.I. 1998/354, **art. 2(1)(2)(ba)**

#### Proceedings

- 9 Subject to the provisions of this Schedule, the Organisation shall regulate its own procedure.
- 10 (1) The Organisation shall make provision for a quorum for its meetings to include at least—
- (a) one member appointed in accordance with paragraph 1(3)(a), (c) or (e);
  - (b) one member appointed in accordance with paragraph 1(3)(b), (d) or (f); and
  - (c) one member appointed in accordance with paragraph 1(3)(g).
- (2) The Organisation shall make provision for a quorum for meetings of any committee or sub-committee to include at least one member or employee of the Organisation.

#### Commencement Information

- I30** Sch. 8 partly in force; Sch. 8 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 8 para. 10 (except specified provisions) in force at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, **art. 2(2)(t)**

- 11 The validity of the proceedings of the Organisation (or any committee or sub-committee) shall not be affected by—
- (a) any vacancy among the members of the Organisation or in the office of chairman of the Organisation, or
  - (b) any defect in the appointment of any person as a member of the Organisation or as chairman of the Organisation.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Evidence*

- 12 A document purporting to be—
- (a) duly executed under the seal of the Organisation, or
  - (b) signed on behalf of the Organisation,
- shall be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, deemed to be so executed or signed.

### *Money*

- 13 The Secretary of State may make payments to the Organisation out of money provided by Parliament.
- [<sup>F277</sup>13A] The Scottish Ministers may make payments to the Organisation in relation to the exercise by it of its functions in or as regards Scotland.
- (2) For the purposes of section 36(3) of the Police (Scotland) Act 1967, any expenditure under sub-paragraph (1) above shall be treated as expenditure incurred under section 36(1) of the said Act of 1967.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F277** Sch. 8 para. 13A inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, **Sch. 20 para. 2(8)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**

- 14 (1) The Organisation may impose such charges as it considers appropriate for the provision of goods and services in accordance with section 109(3) and (4).
- (2) The Organisation shall pay any sums received in the course of carrying out its functions to the Secretary of State.
  - (3) Sub-paragraph (2) shall not apply where the Secretary of State, with the consent of the Treasury, so directs.
  - (4) Any sums received by the Secretary of State under sub-paragraph (2) shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund.
- 15 The Organisation may, for purposes related to information technology, make payments to any police authority.
- 16 (1) The Organisation shall keep proper accounts and records in relation to the accounts.
- (2) The Organisation shall prepare in respect of each financial year a statement of accounts.
  - (3) The statement shall be in such form, and shall contain such information, as the Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, direct.
  - (4) The Organisation shall send copies of the statement to the Secretary of State and to the Comptroller and Auditor General within such period after the end of the financial year to which the statement relates as the Secretary of State may direct.
  - (5) The Comptroller and Auditor General shall examine, certify and report on each statement received by him in accordance with this paragraph and shall lay copies of the statement and his report before each House of Parliament.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) In this paragraph “financial year” means the period of twelve months ending with 31st March; but the first financial year shall be the period beginning with the establishment of the Organisation and ending with the next 31st March.

#### *Annual report*

- 17 (1) As soon as possible after the end of each financial year, the Organisation shall send to the Secretary of State [<sup>F278</sup>and the Scottish Ministers] a report on the discharge of its functions during that year.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall lay a copy of each report before each House of Parliament.
- [<sup>F279</sup>(2A) The Scottish Ministers shall lay a copy of each report before the Scottish Parliament.]
- (3) In this paragraph, “financial year” has the same meaning as in paragraph 16.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F278** Words in Sch. 8 para. 17(1) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(9)(a); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

**F279** Sch. 8 para. 17(2A) inserted (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1747, arts. 1, 3, Sch. 20 Pt. II para. 2(9)(b); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

#### *Status of the Organisation*

- 18 The Organisation shall not be regarded as the servant or agent of the Crown or as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown; and the property of the Organisation shall not be regarded as property of, or property held on behalf of, the Crown.

### SCHEDULE 9

Section 134(1).

#### MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

#### **Extent Information**

**E4** The amendments in Sch. 9 have the same extent as the enactments to which they refer

#### *Explosives Act 1875 (c. 17)*

<sup>F280</sup><sub>1</sub> .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F280** Sch. 9 para. 1 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Civil Defence Act 1948 (c. 5)*

F281<sub>2</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F281** Sch. 9 para. 2 repealed (14.11.2005) by [Civil Contingencies Act 2004 \(c. 36\)](#), s. 34(1), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 2005/2040, art. 3(r)

*Public Records Act 1958 (c. 51)*

3 In Schedule 1 to the Public Records Act 1958 (definition of public records), in Part II of the Table at the end of paragraph 3 there shall be inserted at the appropriate place—

“Police Information Technology Organisation”.

*Trustee Investments Act 1961 (c. 62)*

F282<sub>4</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F282** Sch. 9 paras. 4-6 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F282<sub>5</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F282** Sch. 9 paras. 4-6 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Offices, Shops and Railway Premises Act 1963 (c. 41)*

F282<sub>6</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F282** Sch. 9 paras. 4-6 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)*

7 In Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (departments etc. subject to investigation), there shall be inserted at the appropriate place—

“Police Information Technology Organisation”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Police (Scotland) Act 1967 (c. 77)*

- 8 The Police (Scotland) Act 1967 shall be amended as follows.
- 9 In section 27(3) (regulations as to police cadets), after “(1A),” there shall be inserted “(2B),”.
- 10 At the end of section 28 (regulations as to standards of equipment) (which becomes subsection (1)) there shall be added—
- “(2) The Secretary of State shall consult the Police Information Technology Organisation before making regulations under this section relating to information technology.
- (3) In subsection (2) of this section “information technology” includes any computer or other technology by means of which information or other matter may be recorded or communicated without being reduced to documentary form.”.

F283 11 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F283** Sch. 9 para. 11 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

- 12 At the end of section 36 (common services) there shall be added—
- “(7) The Secretary of State shall consult the Police Information Technology Organisation before making regulations under this section relating to information technology.
- (8) In subsection (7) of this section “information technology” includes any computer or other technology by means of which information or other matter may be recorded or communicated without being reduced to documentary form.”.
- 13 In section 38 (constables engaged on central service and certain temporary service), in subsection (3A), after “service” there shall be inserted “, or on temporary service such as is mentioned in paragraph (ba) or (bb) of the said section 38A(1),”.

**Commencement Information**

**I31** Sch. 9 para. 13 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 13 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 13 in force at 31.10.1997 by [S.I. 1997/2390](#), [art. 2](#) (with [arts. 3-7](#)(but the said [arts. 4-7](#) were revoked (1.4.1998) by [S.I. 1998/354](#), [art. 7](#)))

- 14 In section 38A (constables engaged on service outside their force)—
- (a) in subsection (1), after paragraph (b) there shall be inserted—
- “(ba) temporary service with the National Criminal Intelligence Service on which a person is engaged with the consent of the appropriate authority;
- (bb) temporary service with the Police Information Technology Organisation on which a person is engaged with the consent of the appropriate authority;”;
- and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
**Changes to legislation:** *Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F284 (b) .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F284** Sch. 9 para. 14(b) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

**Commencement Information**  
**I32** Sch. 9 para. 14 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 14 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 14 in force at 31.10.1997 by [S.I. 1997/2390](#), [art. 2](#) (with arts. 3-7 (but the said arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by [S.I. 1998/354](#), [art. 7](#)))

F285 15 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F285** Sch. 9 para. 15 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Leasehold Reform Act 1967 (c. 88)*

F286 16 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F286** Sch. 9 para. 16 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Public Expenditure and Receipts Act 1968 (c. 14)*

F287 17 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F287** Sch. 9 para. 17 repealed (14.11.2005) by [Civil Contingencies Act 2004 \(c. 36\)](#), s. 34(1), [Sch. 3](#); S.I. 2005/2040, art. 3(r)

*Firearms Act 1968 (c. 27)*

18 In section 54 of the Firearms Act 1968 (application of Act to Crown servants), in subsection (3) (which provides that members of police forces and certain employees of police authorities are deemed to be in the service of Her Majesty), at the end of paragraph (b) there shall be inserted “, or  
 (c) a member of the National Criminal Intelligence Service or the National Crime Squad.”.

*Post Office Act 1969 (c. 48)*

F288 19 .....



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F288** Sch. 9 para. 19 repealed (26.3.2001) by S.I. 2001/1149, art. 3(2), **Sch. 2**

*Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Act 1969 (c. 57)*

**F289** 20 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F289** Sch. 9 para. 20 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Police Act (Northern Ireland) 1970 (c. 9 (N.I.))*

**F290** 21 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F290** Sch. 9 para. 21 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 32, ss. 74(2)(3), **Sch. 6** (with Sch. 5 para. 1); S.R. 1999/176, **art. 3**

**F291** 22 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F291** Sch. 9 para. 22 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 32, ss. 74(2)(3), **Sch. 6** (with Sch. 5 para. 1); S.R. 1999/176, **art. 3**

*Local Authorities (Goods and Services) Act 1970 (c. 39)*

23 **F292** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F292** Sch. 9 para. 23 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, **art. 3(j)(m)** (with transitional provisions in **art. 4**)

*Superannuation Act 1972 (c. 11)*

24 The following entry shall be inserted at the appropriate place in the list of “Other Bodies” in Schedule 1 to the Superannuation Act 1972 (kinds of employment to which schemes may apply)—

“Police Information Technology Organisation”.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Employers’ Liability (Defective Equipment and Compulsory Insurance) (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 (NI 6)*

25 <sup>F293</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F293** Sch. 9 para. 25 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Employment Agencies Act 1973 (c. 35)*

<sup>F294</sup>26 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F294** Sch. 9 para. 26 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Juries Act 1974 (c. 23)*

<sup>F295</sup>27 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F295** Sch. 9 para. 27 repealed (5.4.2004) by Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44), s. 336(3)(4), Sch. 37 Pt. 10; S.I. 2004/829, art. 2(1)(2)(l)(iv)

*District Courts (Scotland) Act 1975 (c. 20)*

28 In subsection (2) of section 12 of the District Courts (Scotland) Act 1975 (disqualification in certain cases of justices who are members of local authorities), the following shall be inserted as the first paragraph—  
 “(aa) any reference to a local authority includes a reference to the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service;”.

*House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)*

29 (1) The House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 shall be amended as follows.

<sup>F296</sup>(2) .....

(3) In Part III of Schedule 1 (disqualifying offices), there shall be inserted at the appropriate place—

“Any member of the Police Information Technology Organisation in receipt of remuneration.”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F296** Sch. 9 para. 29(2) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

**Commencement Information**

**I33** Sch. 9 para. 29 wholly in force at 1.4.1998; Sch. 9 para. 29 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 29(3), in force at 1.9.1997 by S.I. 1997/1930, art. 2(1)(2)(x); otherwise in force at 1.4.1998 by S.I. 1998/354 art. 2

*Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)*

30 (1) The Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 shall be amended as follows.

<sup>F297</sup>(2) .....

(3) In Part III of Schedule 1 (disqualifying offices), there shall be inserted at the appropriate place—

“Any member of the Police Information Technology Organisation in receipt of remuneration.”.

**Textual Amendments**

**F297** Sch. 9 para. 30(2) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c. 65)*

<sup>F298</sup>31 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F298** Sch. 9 para. 31 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Fair Employment (Northern Ireland) Act 1976 (c.25)*

[<sup>F299</sup>32 In section 53 of the Fair Employment (Northern Ireland) Act 1976 (police), in subsection (6), in the definition of “chief officer of police”, after paragraph (a) there shall be inserted—

“in relation to a person appointed, or to an appointment falling to be made, under section 9(1)(b) of the Police Act 1997 (police members of the National Criminal Intelligence Service) means the Director General of the National Criminal Intelligence Service;”.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F299** Sch. 9 para. 32 repealed (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(4), Sch. 8; S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, Sch.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Police Pensions Act 1976 (c. 35)*

33 (1) Section 11 of the Police Pensions Act 1976 (interpretation) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)—

- (a) the word “and” after paragraph (a) shall be omitted,
- (b) in paragraph (b) after “it means” there shall be inserted “, subject to paragraphs (c) to (e) below,”, and
- (c) after paragraph (b) there shall be added—
  - “(c) in relation to service of the kind described in section 97(1) (ca) of the Police Act 1996 or section 38A(1)(ba) of the Police (Scotland) Act 1967, it means the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service,
  - (d) in relation to service of the kind described in section 97(1) (cb) of the Police Act 1996, it means the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad, and
  - (e) in relation to service of the kind described in section 97(1) (cc) of the Police Act 1996 or section 38A(1)(bb) of the Police (Scotland) Act 1967, it means the Police Information Technology Organisation.”.

(3) In subsection (5), in the definition of “central service”—

- (a) after “within paragraph (b), (c)” there shall be inserted “, (ca), (cb), (cc)”, and
- (b) after “1967” there shall be inserted “ or means relevant service within paragraph (ba) or (bb) of section 38A(1) of the said Act of 1967”.

*Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976 (c. 57)*

34 In each of sections 51 and 59 of the Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976 (licensing of drivers of private hire vehicles and hackney carriages), subsection (1A) shall be omitted.

*Race Relations Act 1976 (c. 74)*

F300 35 .....

<p><b>Textual Amendments</b>  <b>F300</b> Sch. 9 para. 35 repealed (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 34, s. 9(2), <b>Sch. 3</b> (with s. 10(5)); S.I. 2001/566, <b>art. 2(1)</b></p>
--

F301 36 .....

<p><b>Textual Amendments</b>  <b>F301</b> Sch. 9 para. 36 repealed (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 34, s. 9(2), <b>Sch. 3</b> (with s. 10(5)); S.I. 2001/566, <b>art. 2(1)</b></p>
--

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Sex Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 (NI 15)*

[<sup>F302</sup>37 In Article 19 of the Sex Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 (police), in paragraph (6), in the definition of “chief officer of police”, after sub-paragraph (a) there shall be inserted—

“in relation to a person appointed, or to an appointment falling to be made, under section 9(1)(b) of the Police Act 1997 (police members of the National Criminal Intelligence Service) means the Director General of the National Criminal Intelligence Service;”.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F302** Sch. 9 para. 37 repealed (4.11.2001) by 2000 c. 32, s. 78(4), **Sch. 8**; S.R. 2001/396, art. 2, **Sch.**

*Rent (Agriculture) Act 1976 (c. 80)*

38 <sup>F303</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F303** Sch. 9 para. 38 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Rent Act 1977 (c. 42)*

39 <sup>F304</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F304** Sch. 9 para. 39 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Justices of the Peace Act 1979 (c. 55)*

40 In section 64 of the Justices of the Peace Act 1979 (disqualification in certain cases of justices who are members of local authorities), in subsection (6) (definition of local authority), after “1996” there shall be inserted “, the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service, the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad”.

*Law Reform (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1980 (c. 55)*

41 In Part I of Schedule 1 to the Law Reform (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1980, in Group B (ineligibility for jury service of certain persons concerned with the administration of justice), after paragraph (n) there shall be inserted—

“(na) members of the National Criminal Intelligence Service;  
(nb) members of the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service and persons employed by that Authority under section 13 of the Police Act 1997;”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Commencement Information**

**I34** Sch. 9 para. 41 wholly in force at 1.4.1998; Sch. 9 para. 41 in force for certain purposes at 23.7.1997 by S.I. 1997/1377 art. 4; Sch. 9 para. 41 otherwise in force at 1.4.1998 by S.I. 1998/354 art. 2

*Finance Act 1981 (c. 35)*

42 **F305** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F305** Sch. 9 para. 42 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (c. 67)*

43 **F306** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F306** Sch. 9 para. 43 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Stock Transfer Act 1982 (c. 41)*

**F307** 44 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F307** Sch. 9 para. 44 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*County Courts Act 1984 (c. 28)*

45 **F308** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F308** Sch. 9 para. 45 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (c. 60)*

**F309** 46 .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F309** Sch. 9 paras. 46-48 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

**F309** 47 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F309** Sch. 9 paras. 46-48 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (c. 23)*

**F309** 48 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F309** Sch. 9 paras. 46-48 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Housing Act 1985 (c. 68)*

49 **F310** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F310** Sch. 9 para. 49 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, **art. 3(J)(m)** (with transitional provisions in **art. 4**)

*Housing Associations Act 1985 (c. 69)*

50 In section 106 of the Housing Associations Act 1985 (minor definitions), in subsection (1), in the definition of “local authority”, after “1996” there shall be inserted “ and the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad and the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service ”.

**Commencement Information**

**I35** Sch. 9 para. 50 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 50 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 50 in force at 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, **art. 2** (with arts. 3-7 (but the said arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, **art. 7**))

*Landlord and Tenant Act 1985 (c. 70)*

51 **F311** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F311** Sch. 9 para. 51 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Landlord And Tenant Act 1987 (c. 31)*

52 **F312** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F312** Sch. 9 para. 52 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c.1)*

53 **F313** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F313** Sch. 9 para. 53 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Dartford-Thurrock Crossing Act 1988 (c. 20)*

**F314**54 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F314** Sch. 9 para. 54 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Local Government Finance Act 1988 (c. 41)*

55 **F315** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F315** Sch. 9 para. 55 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

56 In section 65A (which was inserted by section 3 of the <sup>M52</sup>Local Government and Rating Act 1997 and makes provision about Crown property), in subsection (4)(b) for the words from “or by a police authority” to the end there shall be substituted “, a police authority established under section 3 of the Police Act 1996, the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service or the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad”.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Marginal Citations**

M52 1997 c. 29.

*Housing Act 1988 (c. 50)*

57 In Schedule 1 to the Housing Act 1988 (tenancies which cannot be assured tenancies), in paragraph 12 (local authority tenancies, etc.), in sub-paragraph (2) (g), after “1996” there shall be inserted “, the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service and the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad”.

**Commencement Information**

I36 Sch. 9 para. 57 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 57 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 57 in force at 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, art. 2 (with arts. 3-7 (but the said arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, art. 7))

*Road Traffic Act 1988 (c. 52)*

F316<sup>58</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

F316 Sch. 9 paras. 58-62 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F316<sup>59</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

F316 Sch. 9 paras. 58-62 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Security Service Act 1989 (c. 5)*

F316<sup>60</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

F316 Sch. 9 paras. 58-62 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F316<sup>61</sup> .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F316** Sch. 9 paras. 58-62 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Official Secrets Act 1989 (c. 6)*

**F316** 62 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F316** Sch. 9 paras. 58-62 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (c. 8)*

63 **F317** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F317** Sch. 9 para. 63 repealed (1.4.2002) by [2001 c. 16](#), s. 137, [Sch. 7 Pt. 5\(1\)](#); S.I. 2002/344, **art. 3(j)(m)** (with transitional provisions in [art. 4](#))

*Aviation and Maritime Security Act 1990 (c. 31)*

- 64 In section 22 of the Aviation and Maritime Security Act 1990 (power to require harbour authorities to promote searches in harbour areas), in subsection (4)(b)—
- (a) the words “who is a member of a body of constables maintained” shall be omitted,
  - (b) at the beginning of both sub-paragraph (i) and sub-paragraph (ii) there shall be inserted “ who is a member of a body of constables maintained ”, and
  - (c) at the end of sub-paragraph (ii) there shall be inserted “, or
    - (iii) who is a member of the National Criminal Intelligence Service within section 9(1)(a) or (b) of the Police Act 1997 or a member of the National Crime Squad within section 55(1)(a) or (b) of that Act.”.

*Road Traffic Act 1991 (c. 40)*

- 65 Section 47 of the Road Traffic Act 1991 (applications for licences to drive hackney carriages etc.) shall cease to have effect.

**Commencement Information**

**I37** Sch. 9 para. 65 partly in force; Sch. 9 para. 65 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 135(1); Sch. 9 para. 65 in force for E.W. at 1.3.2002 by [S.I. 2002/413](#), **art. 2**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Local Government Finance Act 1992 (c. 14)*

- 66 In section 19 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992 (exclusion of Crown exemption in certain cases), in subsection (3), for “and” at the end of paragraph (c) there shall be substituted—
- “(ca) the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service;  
(cb) the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad;”.

**Commencement Information**

**I38** Sch. 9 para. 66 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 66 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 66 in force at 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, art. 2 (with arts. 3-7 (but the said arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, art. 7))

- 67 <sup>F318</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F318** Sch. 9 para. 67 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

- 68 <sup>F319</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F319** Sch. 9 para. 68 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 16, s. 137, Sch. 7 Pt. 5(1); S.I. 2002/344, art. 3(j)(m) (with transitional provisions in art. 4)

*Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (c.53)*

- <sup>F320</sup>69 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F320** Sch. 9 para. 69 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

- <sup>F321</sup>70 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F321** Sch. 9 para. 70 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Criminal Appeals Act 1995 (c. 35)*

- 71 (1) Section 22 of the Criminal Appeals Act 1995 (meaning of “public body” etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F322(a) .....
- (b) for paragraph (b) (meaning of “chief officer of police”) there shall be substituted—
  - “(b) references to the chief officer of police—
    - (i) in relation to the [F323Police Service of Northern Ireland] and the [F323Police Service of Northern Ireland Reserve], are to the Chief Constable of the Constabulary,
    - (ii) in relation to the National Crime Squad, are to the Director General of the Squad, and
    - (iii) in relation to any other police force maintained otherwise than by a police authority, are to the chief constable,”
- F322(c) .....
- F322(d) .....
- F324(3) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F322** Sch. 9 para. 71(2)(a)(c)(d) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

**F323** Words in Sch. 9 para. 71(2)(b) substituted (4.11.2001) by [2000 c. 32](#), s. 78(1), [Sch. 6 para. 20\(2\)\(a\)\(b\)](#); [S.R. 2001/396](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)

**F324** Sch. 9 para. 71(3) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Police Act 1996 (c. 16)*

72 The Police Act 1996 shall be amended as follows.

**Commencement Information**

**I39** Sch. 9 para. 72 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 72 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para 72 in force at 31.10.1997 by [S.I. 1997/2390](#), [art. 2](#) (with [arts. 3-7](#)(but the said [arts. 4-7](#) were revoked (1.4.1998) by [S.I. 1998/354](#), [art. 7](#)))

F32573 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F325** Sch. 9 para. 73 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378](#), art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F32674 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F326** Sch. 9 para. 74 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\)](#), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. para. 13\(dd\)](#)

75 At the end of section 53 (regulations as to standards of equipment) (which becomes subsection (1)) there shall be added—

“(2) The Secretary of State shall consult the Police Information Technology Organisation before making regulations under this section relating to information technology.

(3) In subsection (2) “information technology” includes any computer or other technology by means of which information or other matter may be recorded or communicated without being reduced to documentary form.”.

F327 76 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F327** Sch. 9 para. 76 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\)](#), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. para. 13\(dd\)](#)

F328 77 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F328** Sch. 9 para. 77 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\)](#), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. para. 13\(dd\)](#)

78 (1) Section 57 (common services) shall be amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (3) there shall be inserted—

“(3A) Regulations under this section relating to all police forces may also require the National Crime Squad to use the specified facilities or services, or the facilities or services of a specified description, if the Secretary of State considers that it would be in the interests of the efficiency or effectiveness of the Squad for the Squad to do so.”.

(3) In subsection (4), at the end of paragraph (b) there shall be added “, and

(c) if the regulations relate to the National Crime Squad, the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad and the Director General of that Squad.”.

(4) After subsection (4) there shall be added—

“(5) The Secretary of State shall consult the Police Information Technology Organisation before making regulations under this section relating to information technology.

(6) In subsection (5) “information technology” includes any computer or other technology by means of which information or other matter may be recorded or communicated without being reduced to documentary form.”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F329<sup>79</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F329** Sch. 9 paras. 79-84 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F329<sup>80</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F329** Sch. 9 paras. 79-84 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F329<sup>81</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F329** Sch. 9 paras. 79-84 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

**Commencement Information**

**I40** Sch. 9 para. 81 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 81 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 81 in force at 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, **art. 2** (with arts. 3-7 (but the said arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, **art. 7**))

F329<sup>82</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F329** Sch. 9 paras. 79-84 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F329<sup>83</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F329** Sch. 9 paras. 79-84 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

F329<sup>84</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F329** Sch. 9 paras. 79-84 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

85 In section 88 (liability for wrongful acts of constables), in subsection (5)(b), after “or 98” there shall be inserted “ of this Act or section 23 of the Police Act 1997 ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

86 (1) Section 97 (police officers engaged on service outside their force) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), after paragraph (c) there shall be inserted—

- “(ca) temporary service with the National Criminal Intelligence Service on which a person is engaged with the consent of the appropriate authority;
- (cb) temporary service with the National Crime Squad on which a person is engaged with the consent of the appropriate authority;
- (cc) temporary service with the Police Information Technology Organisation on which a person is engaged with the consent of the appropriate authority;”.

F330(3) .....

F330(4) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F330** Sch. 9 para. 86(3)(4) repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

**Commencement Information**

**I41** Sch. 9 para. 86 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 86 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 86 in force at 31.10.1997 by S.I. 1997/2390, **art. 2** (with arts. 3-7 (but the said arts. 4-7 were revoked (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1998/354, **art. 7**))

F33187 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F331** Sch. 9 para. 87 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)*

F33288 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F332** Sch. 9 para. 88 repealed (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), s. 178(8), **Sch. 17 Pt. 2**; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1), Sch. para. 13(dd)

*Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996 (c. 53)*

89 In section 3 of the Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996 (persons ineligible for grant under Chapter I of Part I of that Act), in subsection (2), for paragraph (g) there shall be substituted—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“(g) a police authority established under section 3 of the Police Act 1996, the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service or the Service Authority for the National Crime Squad;”.

F333<sup>90</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F333 Sch. 9 para. 90 repealed (19.7.2003) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Housing Assistance\) \(England and Wales\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1860\)](#), art. 1(3), [Sch. 6](#)

*Juries (Northern Ireland) Order 1996 (NI 6)*

91 In Schedule 2 to the Juries (Northern Ireland) Order 1996 (persons ineligible for jury service), after the entry for members and staff of the [<sup>F334</sup>Northern Ireland Policing Board] there shall be inserted—

“Members of the National Criminal Intelligence Service, members of the Service Authority for the National Criminal Intelligence Service and persons employed by the Authority.”.

**Textual Amendments**  
F334 Words in Sch. 9 para. 91 substituted (4.11.2001) by [2000 c. 32, s. 78\(1\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 20\(3\)](#); [S.R. 2001/396](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)

**Commencement Information**  
I42 Sch. 9 para. 91 wholly in force at 31.10.1997; Sch. 9 para. 91 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135; Sch. 9 para. 91 in force at 31.10.1997 by [S.I. 1997/2390](#), [art. 2](#) (with [arts. 3-7](#)(but the said [arts. 4-7](#) were revoked (1.4.1998) by [S.I. 1998/354](#), [art. 7](#)))

*Justices of the Peace Act 1997 (c.25)*

F335<sup>92</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F335 Sch. 9 para. 92 repealed (1.4.2005) by [Courts Act 2003 \(c. 39\)](#), s. 110(1), [Sch. 10](#); [S.I. 2005/910](#), art. 3(aa)

SCHEDULE 10

Section 134(2).

REPEALS

**Extent Information**  
E5 The repeals in Sch. 10 have the same extent as the enactments to which they refer.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I43** Sch. 10 partly in force; Sch. 10 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 135(1); Sch. 10 in force for certain purposes at: 1.4.1998 by S.I. 1998/354, art. 2(2)(ay)(bc); 1.3.2002 for E.W. by S.I. 2002/413, art. 2

Chapter	Short title	Extent of repeal
1967 c. 77.	Police (Scotland) Act 1967.	In section 39(4), the word “or” in the third place where it occurs.
1967 c. 88.	Leasehold Reform Act 1967.	In section 28(5)(a), the word “and” in the second place where it occurs.
1972 c. 70.	Local Government Act 1972.	In section 146A(1A), the word “not”. In section 223(2), the word “and”.
1976 c. 35.	Police Pensions Act 1976.	After section 11(2)(a), the word “and”.
1976 c. 57.	Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976.	Sections 51(1A) and 59(1A).
1986 c. 60.	Financial Services Act 1986.	Section 189. Schedule 14.
1987 c. 22.	Banking Act 1987.	Section 95.
1989 c. 5.	Security Service Act 1989.	Section 2(3B).
1990 c. 31.	Aviation and Maritime Security Act 1990.	In section 22(4)(b), the words “who is a member of a body of constables maintained”.
1991 c. 40.	Road Traffic Act 1991.	Section 47.
1993 c. 21.	Osteopaths Act 1993.	Section 39.
1993 c. 39.	National Lottery etc. Act 1993.	Section 19.
1994 c. 17.	Chiropractors Act 1994.	Section 40.
1995 c. 25.	Environment Act 1995.	In Schedule 22, paragraph 17(a).
1996 c. 16.	Police Act 1996.	In section 62(1), at the end of paragraph (b) the word “or”. In section 98(4), the word “or” in the sixth place it occurs.
1996 c. 35.	Security Service Act 1996.	Section 1(3).

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 01/04/2006. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:**

Police Act 1997 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 08 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.